



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

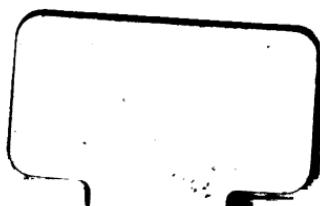
About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>





600022619Q







SINNOTT'S MILITARY CATECHISM:

ADAPTED TO THE
"Field Exercise & Evolutions of Infantry"
AS REVISED IN 1861.

BY
CAPTAIN WILLIAM D. MALTON,
DUMFRIESSHIRE MILITIA.
(Author of "Company and Battalion Drill Illustrated," &c. &c.)

FIFTEENTH EDITION.

London:
PRINTED AND PUBLISHED BY
W. CLOWES & SONS, 14, CHARING CROSS.
1862.

~~200. c. 178.~~
231. c. 162.

Entered at Stationers' Hall.



DEDICATION OF THE FIRST REVISED EDITION.

TO

LIEUT.-GENERAL SIR J. F. LOVE, K.C.B., K.H., &c.

AND TO

THE OTHER OFFICERS OF THE BOARD

APPOINTED, IN 1859, TO REVISE THE

"Field Exercise and Evolutions of the Army,"

THIS WORK, IN ITS PRESENT FORM,

IS

(WITH THEIR PERMISSION)

DEDICATED

BY

THE EDITOR.



P R E F A C E.

THE present Edition of this Catechism will be found, I trust, clearer and more comprehensive than any of the preceding. While the phraseology has been considerably abridged, and repetition as far as possible avoided, no point which appeared to admit of a question has been left unnoticed.

Successive alterations and improvements in the work having gradually left it Sinnott's in name only, I have also taken advantage of the present opportunity to discard the old arrangement of the movements for the more perfect, and now more familiar, classification adopted in the *Field Exercise*.

I have the more willingly incurred the extra labour involved in the transposition of so many Sections, in the belief—which the recent thorough revision of the Book may fairly justify—that there will be no material change in the authorized system of drill for some time to come.

W. D. M.

April, 1862.

PREFACE TO THE FIRST REVISED EDITION.

THERE is perhaps no class of technical works in which extreme clearness and accuracy are more important, or more difficult of attainment, than in Manuals of reference on Drill. At the same time there are few which are subjected to more constant, and severe (because practical) tests.

It was therefore not without an adequate sense of the responsibility I was incurring, that, at the Publishers' request, I undertook to re-write a book so celebrated in its way as *Sinnott's catechism*; and no exertion on my part has been wanting to make the present Edition worthy of the favour justly accorded to its predecessors.

The recent changes in the cautions and words of command; the abolition of the formation of Threes; and, more especially, the introduction of the system—apparently little understood, at any rate very imperfectly carried out, in former days—of making the drill of the Company a direct preparation for that of the Battalion, and the drill of the latter for that of the Brigade; have rendered *Sinnott* so far

PREFACE TO THE FIRST REVISED EDITION. vii

obsolete, that the greater part of the old matter has proved unavailable.

I have, however, in re-constructing the book, endeavoured to preserve its character, by keeping as closely as possible to Sinnott's classification of the movements and general method of arrangement.

The only additions to the original work of which the space at my disposal has allowed, consist of the words of command for proving a Company and for the Manual and Platoon, and a short Glossary.

I have to express my cordial acknowledgments to Colonel Lysons, C.B., Assistant Adjutant-General, who has kindly enabled me to deal with certain points on which the *Field Exercise* is silent; and to Colonel E. A. Whitmore [now Military Secretary in Ireland], to whom I have been indebted for many valuable suggestions while preparing these sheets for the Press.

W. D. M.

January, 1860.

C O N T E N T S.

C O M P A N Y D R I L L .

SECTION	PAGE
I. Formation of a Company in Line and Column, &c.	1
II. Dressing	7
III. A Company as in Line taking Open order and resuming Close order	8
IV. Marching to the Front and Rear	11
V. The Back Step	20
VI. The Side (or Closing) Step	21
VII. A Company as in Line wheeling into Column . .	24
VIII. A Company as in Column wheeling into Line .	29
IX. A Company wheeling any given number of paces on either flank, from the Halt	32
X. A Company wheeling on its Centre	36
XI. A Company as in Line wheeling into Open Column of Subdivisions (or Sections)	40
XII. An Open Column of Subdivisions (or Sections) wheeling into Line	44
XIII. Marching past in Slow and Quick time	46
XIV. A Company as in Line advancing from a flank in Open Column of Subdivisions (or Sections) . .	50
XV. The Echelon March of Subdivisions (or Sections)	51
XVI. Marching on an Alignment in Open Column of Subdivisions (or Sections)	53
XVII. A Company in Open Column of Subdivisions (or Sections) forming to the Reverse Flank . . .	55
XVIII. File Marching	58
XIX. Formation of Fours	60

CONTENTS.

ix

SECTION		PAGE
XX. A Company marching in Files or Fours forming to the Front, to either Flank, or to the Right (or Left) about		65
XXI. Countermarching by Files and Ranks		69
XXII. Diminishing and increasing the Front of an Open Column Halted		72
XXIII. Diminishing and increasing the Front of an Open Column on the March		76
XXIV. A Company in Open Column of Subdivisions Diminishing Front by breaking off Files, or by breaking into Fours (or Files)		78
XXV. Forming Close Column of Sections and Company Square		80
XXVI. Forming Rallying Square		85
<hr/>		
BATTALION DRILL.		
XXVII. Formation of a Battalion on Parade		89
XXVIII. A Battalion in Line taking Open order and resuming Close order		94
XXIX. Advancing and Retiring in Line		99
XXX. Charging in Line		101
XXXI. Dressing a Battalion in Line		102
XXXII. Advancing and Retiring by Wings, and Firing .		104
XXXIII. When a Battalion advancing in Line passes Obstacles		107
XXXIV. When a Battalion retiring in Line passes Obstacles, or marches through a relieving Line		110
XXXV. Forming Close or Quarter-distance Column from any more open Column		112
XXXVI. A Close or Quarter-distance Column Opening from the Front, the Rear, or any named Company .		116
XXXVII. A Column, at Close or Quarter distance, Wheeling on a fixed and moveable Pivot		119

SECTION		PAGE
XXXVIII. A Column, at Close or Quarter distance, changing front to the rear by the Wheel of Subdivisions round the Centre		123
XXXIX. Changing the Order of a Column by the successive march of the rear Companies to the Front.		126
XL. A Column taking ground to a Flank		130
<hr/>		
' XLI. A Battalion in Line wheeling into Open Column .		134
XLII. A Battalion in Line moving in Open Column from either Flank along the Rear		138
XLIII. A Battalion in Line advancing from a Flank in Open Column of Companies (Subdivisions, or Sections)		141
XLIV. A Battalion in Line advancing in Double Column of Companies (Subdivisions, or Sections)		144
XLV. A Battalion in Line retiring in Open Column from a Flank		147
XLVI. A Battalion in Line retiring in Double Column from both Flanks in Rear of the Centre		151
XLVII. A Battalion in Line forming Open,Quarter-distance, or Close Column on any named Company		154
<hr/>		
XLVIII. A Battalion in Open Column wheeling into Line .		162
XLIX. A Battalion in Open Column forming Line to the Front on any named Company		164
L. A Battalion in Open Column forming Line to the Reverse Flank		175
LI. A Battalion in Double Column, on the March, forming Line to the front		178
LII. A Battalion in Double Column forming Line to the Right or Left		181
LIII. A Battalion in Close or Quarter-distance Column Deploying into Line		183

CONTENTS.

xi

SECTION		PAGE
LIV. A Battalion in Line changing Front by the intermediate formation of Open Column on any named Company	190	
<hr/>		
LV. A Battalion in Column forming Square	192	
LVI. A Square preparing for Cavalry	198	
LVII. A Battalion in Square re-forming Column or Double Column	200	
LVIII. A Battalion in Line forming Square	203	
LIX. A Battalion forming Company Squares; and re-forming Companies	204	
LX. A Square marching in any Direction	205	
LXI. A Battalion forming Square Two-deep; and re-forming Column	206	
<hr/>		
LXII. Oblique Echelon Movements and Formations . .	207	
LXIII. Direct Echelon Movements and Formations . .	219	
<hr/>		
LXIV. Inspection or Review of a Battalion	224	

APPENDIX.

(1). Method of Proving a Company, and Words of Command for the <i>Manual</i> and <i>Platoon</i>	234
(2). Definitions and Derivations	237

 The reference 'F. E.' is to the "*Field Exercise and Evolutions of Infantry.*"

Note.

The words of command given by the Drill Instructor in Company, and by the Battalion Commander (or other mounted Officer) in Battalion, Drill, are printed in **CAPITALS**: all other words of command in *Italics*.

The letters **C**, **L**, **E**, and **G** in the margin are intended to assist the eye in selecting questions on the duty of the *Captain*, *Lieutenant*, *Ensign*, or *Covering-serjeant*. When several consecutive questions relate to the same person, the marginal letter is not repeated.

The cautionary word "*Company*" or "*No. —*", always given to a Company, Subdivision, or Section by its leader before he gives any word of command has, in order to save space, been omitted throughout. For the same reason, troops armed with the short rifle are termed '*Riflemen*'.

A MILITARY CATECHISM.

Section I.—Formation of the Company in Line and Column, &c.

(F. E., pp. 59, 69-71.)

QUESTION 1.—When a company forms singly, for drill, how do the men fall in?

ANSWER.—In two ranks at close order; the files lightly touching to the flank file first placed. *Riflemen* fall in with ordered, other troops with shouldered, arms; bayonets (or swords) unfixed.

Q. 2.—How do the officers, &c., take post?

A.—As in *line*. (See Q. 22.)

Q. 3.—What is a ‘file’?

A.—Each front-rank man and his rear-rank man together compose a file.

Q. 4.—How is a company sized?

A.—From flanks to centre; and so that each rear-rank man may be, as nearly as possible, the height of his front-rank man.

Q. 5.—State the method adopted when a company is first sized?

A.—The men having been placed in single rank according to their heights, the tallest man on the right, the shortest on the left, the right-hand man is directed to take 3 paces to the front; the next man is then told to place himself 3 paces in front of the left-hand man of the rank as a new left-hand man; the third tallest man to place himself on the left of the right-hand man, the fourth tallest on the right of the left-hand man, and so on alternately till they meet in the centre. The men are then numbered off from the right, and told off into subdivisions; and the even numbers of the right subdivision and the odd numbers of the left are ordered

to take a pace to the rear. (If the right-hand man of the left subdivision is an even number, he must be cautioned to step back, on the word "*March*", with the odd numbers of his subdivision; if the left-hand man is an odd number, he must be cautioned to stand fast with the even numbers.) Lastly, the whole are closed on the centre file, and ordered to dress by the right; care being taken that the rear rank covers correctly.

Q. 6.—Is a company usually sized when it comes on parade?

A.—No: when the men have once been sized, they should recollect their relative heights, and be able to take their proper places.

Q. 7.—At what distance are the ranks at close order?

A.—One pace; measuring from the heels of the one rank to the heels of the other.

Q. 8.—What is the average space occupied by each man, when in the proper position of a soldier?

A.—Twenty-one inches.

Q. 9.—Describe the proper position of a soldier when standing at attention?

A.—The shoulders and body should be exactly square to the front; heels in line and closed, toes turned out so that the feet may form an angle of 60 degrees, knees straight; the elbow of the arm not carrying the rifle should be close to the side, the palm of the hand turned flat to the thigh, thumb close to the forefinger and as far back as the seam of the trouser; hips rather drawn back, breast advanced, the body straight and inclining forward so that its weight may bear principally on the fore part of the feet; the head erect but not thrown back, the chin slightly drawn in, and the eyes looking straight to the front.

Q. 10.—How is a company told off?

A.—The word "*Number off*" is given, on which the men call out their numbers from right to left: the company is then told off into two subdivisions termed

respectively 'right' and 'left', and into four sections numbered 1, 2, 3, and 4 from the right.

Q. 11.—What are *right* and *left* files?

A.—Odd numbers are 'right', even numbers are 'left', files.

Q. 12.—Suppose there is an odd number on the left of the company?

A.—The left file of the company, though an odd number, will be a *left* file; and the left file but one, though an even number, will be a *right* file.

Q. 13.—Why?

A.—In order that when the company forms fours, the four on the left flank may be complete. (*See Sec. XIX., Q. 2, 3.*)

Q. 14.—What will the third file from the left be termed in that case?

A.—Being a *right* file without a *left* file, it will be called 'an odd file'.

Q. 15.—What is a blank file?

A.—A file without a rear-rank man.

Q. 16.—Should there be a blank file in a company, which man of the front rank will remain uncovered?

A.—The third man from the left of the company.

Q. 17.—When a company cannot be divided into subdivisions of equal strength, which will be the stronger of the two subdivisions?

A.—If the company is ordered by the drill instructor to 'TELL OFF AS A RIGHT COMPANY', the right subdivision; if 'AS A LEFT COMPANY', the left subdivision.

Q. 18.—What is the difference between a 'right' and 'left' company?

A.—The former is one the number of which, in the battalion, is uneven; the latter, the number of which is even.

Q. 19.—Of two unequal sections in a subdivision, which will be the stronger?

A.—The outer of the two.

Q. 20.—Which is considered the centre of a company?

A.—The left-hand man of the right subdivision; except when the company wheels on its centre to its right. (See Sec. X., Q. 2.)

Q. 21.—What will a company be considered, while drilling singly?

A.—As one of a battalion, and on that principle will all its movements be regulated. The drill instructor, previously to each movement, will state the supposed battalion formation, thus:—"As a COMPANY IN LINE" or "As a COMPANY IN COLUMN, RIGHT (or LEFT) IN FRONT": and the officers, &c., will move at once to their proper places, if not already there.

C.L.E. Q. 22.—How are the officers and non-commissioned officers posted when the company is in *line*?

A.—The captain is on the right of the front rank, covered by his covering-serjeant, who is on the right of the rear rank. The subalterns and serjeants form a third or 'supernumerary' rank, three paces from the rear rank.

Q. 23.—Does the supernumerary rank always retain its distance of three paces from the rear rank, when the company is in line?

A.—Yes.

L.E. Q. 24.—In rear of which files are the supernumerary officers respectively stationed?

A.—The senior in rear of the 2nd file from the left of the company, the junior in rear of the centre. Should there be three supernumerary officers, the junior will be in rear of the 2nd section from the right flank, the next in rear of the 3rd section, and the senior in rear of the 4th.

Q. 25.—How are the supernumerary non-commissioned officers distributed?

A.—They divide the space in rear of their respective subdivisions and sections.

Q. 26.—Where are the drummers and pioneer stationed?

A.—The former in rear of the 2nd section, the latter in rear of the 3rd section ; aligned with the supernumerary rank.

Q. 27.—How are the officers and non-commissioned C.L.E. officers posted in a company in column ? C.

A.—The captain on the pivot flank of the front rank ; the lieutenant one pace in rear of the 2nd file from the reverse flank ; and the covering-serjeant one pace in rear of the 2nd file from the pivot flank. The places of the remaining supernumeraries will be the same as in line, but (except while at open order in marching past : *see Sec. XIV.*) at one pace distant from the rear rank.

Q. 28.—Where are the drummers and pioneer posted?

A.—When manœuvring, they will be in the supernumerary rank, as in line.

Q. 29.—What is meant by the ‘pivot’ and the ‘reverse’ flank of a company in column ?

A.—When a column is right in front (*i.e.* when the company that stands on the right in line is in front), the left of each company ; when a column is left in front, the right of each company ; will be its pivot flank. The opposite is called the reverse flank.

Q. 30.—If the captain is required to change his flank, will he pass by the front or by the rear ? C.

A.—As a general rule, whether the company is in line or column, halted or on the march, he will pass by the rear.

Q. 31.—Are there no exceptions to that rule ?

A.—Yes ; in changing flank preparatory to closing in line, when no number of paces is specified (*see Sec. VI., Q. 13, 14*) ; in wheeling from column (right in front) into line and *vice versa*, on a moveable pivot ; when the company faces, or turns, to the reverse flank ; and in the formation of company (subdivisions, or sections) to the front from files or fours ; he will change his flank by the *front*.

L E. Q. 32.—How do the supernumerary officers change flanks?

A.—By the rear: except when they are leading a subdivision (or section) and it takes ground by files, or fours, to the reverse flank.

c. Q. 33.—The covering-serjeant?

A.—Changes invariably by the rear. When both captain and coverer change by the rear, the latter will follow the former.

Q. 34.—What word must always be given by the leader of a company, subdivision, or section, when he changes his flank on the march?

A.—He will give "*By the Right*" or "*By the Left*" as he falls in, in his new place; if he changes during a wheel, that word will immediately follow the word "*Forward*".

Q. 35.—In the absence of the captain, lieutenant, or ensign, by whom will their places be taken?

A.—By the next in rank, whether officer or serjeant.

Q. 36.—In the case of a serjeant supplying the place of an officer, will he perform all the latter's duties?

A.—Yes: with this exception, that no serjeant will under any circumstances move out in front of the line.

Q. 37.—How should words of command be given?

A.—At the full extent of the voice. Every caution, or cautionary part of a word of command, should be given slowly; the last (or executive) part of a command, sharply and emphatically. When the last word of a caution is a signal for any preparatory movement, it will be separated from the rest of the command by a pause.

Q. 38.—Will the men be ordered to fix bayonets (or swords) previously to the commencement of the drill?

A.—Troops armed with the long rifle will be ordered to fix bayonets, unless they are to move as light infantry. Riflemen will remain with swords unfixed.

Q. 39.—Do serjeants, when in the ranks, fix swords?

A.—No: except when forming the escort for the colours, or when in square.

Q. 40.—Describe the position of standing at ease?

A.—The right foot is drawn back six inches, and the left knee slightly bent.

Q. 41.—Suppose the command "*Stand at ease*" is followed by the word "*Stand easy*"?

A.—The men may move their limbs, but without quitting their ground.

Q. 42.—May men standing easy be called, at once, to *attention*?

A.—No: the caution "*Eyes front*" must first be given.

[*For the method of Proving a company, see APPENDIX (1).*]

Section II.—Dressing.

(F. E., pp. 31, 45.)

Q. 1.—In what case will the word "*Dress*" be preceded by "*Eyes right (or left)*"?

A.—When the men are on the alignment they have to occupy, and their dressing simply requires correction.

Q. 2.—When the command "*Dress*" is given singly, to which flank should the front-rank men look in order to take up their dressing?

A.—To that flank whence the sound proceeds.

Q. 3.—What are the faults which they should be cautioned to avoid, in dressing?

A.—Passing the line, turning their heads too much to the flank, and bending back or forward.

Q. 4.—What part of their persons will constitute the line of dressing?

A.—Their faces.

Q. 5.—On what does the true principle of dressing depend?

A.—On each man being just able to distinguish the lower part of the face of the second man beyond him, on that flank by which he is dressing.

Q. 6.—How do the rear-rank men get their dressing?

A.—Continuing to look to their front, they cower and correct their distances as the front-rank men take up their dressing.

Q. 7.—What rule should be observed by the person who is dressing a company?

A.—He should dress the first two or three files on the flank of *appui* (or dressing), and the other files in succession, on the distant point placed for that purpose. Should no distant point be placed, some casual object should invariably be fixed upon. The dressing should be done quickly, and with as little noise as possible.

Q. 8.—When men are allowed to ‘stand easy’, and it is necessary that the line of dressing should be accurately kept, what caution should be given them?

A.—They should be cautioned not to move the left foot.

Section III.—A Company as in Line taking Open order, and resuming Close order.

(F. E., pp. 69–71.)

[Compare Section XXVIII.]

Q. 1.—At what distance are the ranks when at open order in line?

A.—Three paces; measuring, as usual, from heel to heel.

Q. 2.—What caution will be given to the company preparatory to its taking open order; and why?

A.—“*AS A COMPANY IN LINE*”: this movement being a practice for that described in Section XXVIII.

Q. 3.—What command will follow?

A.—“*REAR RANK TAKE OPEN ORDER*”.

c. Q. 4.—Who will move on that word; and why?

A.—The flank men of the rear rank will step back two paces, and face to the right; thus marking the ground on which the rear rank is to halt and dress at open order. The covering-serjeant will take one pace of 21 inches to his left (into the space vacated by the right-flank rear-rank man), as would be necessary, in battalion, to let the supernumerary officers of the company next on the right pass to the front.

Q. 5.—How do the officers act on the word "ORDER"? C.L.E.

A.—They recover their swords; and, moving to the front of the company, place themselves one pace in front of the files opposite to which they will stand at open order.

Q. 6.—Which are those files?

A.—The captain will be opposite to the 2nd file from the right of the company; the lieutenant and ensign in front of the same files they cover when at close order in line.

Q. 7.—By which flank of the company do the subalterns pass, in moving out to the front?

A.—Round the left flank.

Q. 8.—What command is next given, and to whom will it apply?

A.—"MARCH"; which will apply to the officers, covering-serjeant, and to the rear and supernumerary ranks.

Q. 9.—How do the officers and covering-serjeant act?

A.—The officers take two paces to their front; and the lieutenant and ensign then glance their eyes to the captain, by whom they will be dressed. The coverer steps up into the captain's place.

Q. 10.—The rear and supernumerary ranks?

A.—Take two paces to the rear, look to the right, and take up their dressing.

Q. 11.—Does not the word "MARCH" also affect the rear-rank flank men?

A.—Yes; they front, and raise the right (or, if Riflemen, the left) arm from the elbow at right angles to the body.

Q. 12.—Why do they raise the arm?

A.—Because that would be necessary, in battalion, to enable the persons dressing the rear rank of their companies to see the extent of their front.

Q. 13.—By whom will the rear and supernumerary ranks be dressed?

A.—By the serjeant on the right of the latter.

C. Q. 14.—What word will be given by the captain, and by the supernumerary serjeant last mentioned?

A.—The former, when he has dressed the officers, will give the word "*Steady*": the latter will give "*Dress*" to both the rear and supernumerary ranks before, and "*Eyes front*" after, dressing them.

Q. 15.—Will the captain face to his left in order to dress the other officers?

A.—No; he will merely glance his eyes in that direction.

C.L.E. Q. 16.—What will be done on the captain's word "*Steady*"?

A.—He and the other officers will port their swords, and look to their front.

Q. 17.—On the supernumerary serjeant's word "*Eyes front*"?

A.—The rear and supernumerary ranks, as they respectively get that word, will look to their front; the flank men of the former rank dropping the arm that is raised.

Q. 18.—In what will the company be practised while at open order?

A.—In the salute with which a reviewing officer is received by a battalion drawn up in line. (*See Sections XXVIII., LXIV.*)

C.L.E. Q. 19.—When close order is to be resumed, what caution is given; and to whom will it apply?

A.—"**Rear Rank take Close Order**"; on which the officers face to the right, bringing their swords to the 'recover' as the right foot is drawn to the rear.

Q. 20.—What command follows ; and whom will it cause to move ? C. c.

A.—“ MARCH ” : on which word the covering-serjeant takes two paces to his rear and one pace to his left, as would be necessary in battalion (to let the supernumerary officers of the company on his right pass through) ; the lieutenant and ensign, countermarching to the right, move to their places in the supernumerary rank ; and the rear and supernumerary ranks take two paces to their front.

Q. 21.—By which flank of the company do the L. E. supernumerary officers pass ?

A.—By the left, as in moving out to the front.

Q. 22.—When do the captain and covering-serjeant C. c. resume their places in line ?

A.—The captain, when the supernumerary officers have passed to the rear ; the coverer, when the captain is in his place.

Q. 23.—As each officer arrives in his place he will, of course, front ?

A.—Yes ; and carry his sword.

Q. 24.—On what other occasion (besides for the general salute or for inspection) do companies in line take open order ?

A.—Before performing the manual exercise.

Q. 25.—Do the officers and men, in that case, move as directed in this Section ?

A. The men do ; the officers do not. See Sec. LXIV.

Section IV.—Marching to the Front and Rear.

(F. E., pp. 18–28, 45, 72.)

Q. 1.—How many times of marching are there ?

A.—Three ; the *slow*, *quick*, and *double*.

Q. 2.—How many paces are taken in a minute in the several degrees of march ; and what is the length of each pace ?

A.—Men moving in *slow* time take 75 paces a minute, each pace measuring 30 inches; in *quick* time 110 paces, each of 30 inches; in *double* time 150 paces, each of 36 inches.

Q. 3.—May the time be marked by taps of the drum, while the men are marching?

A.—No.

Q. 4.—May the words *right*, *left*, be given?

A.—No; for they would answer the same purpose.

Q. 5.—When should the time be marked by taps of the drum?

A.—Immediately before the men march off.

Q. 6.—With which foot do men step off on the word “**MARCH**”?

A.—With the left; except, of course, when ordered to close to the right by the side step. (*Section VI.*)

Q. 7.—How are the feet turned out in marching in slow and quick time?

A.—At an angle of 30 degrees.

Q. 8.—Before the drill instructor puts the company in motion, what will he ascertain?

A.—That the men are accurately dressed, and that each man is exactly in the position described in *Section I.*, Q. 9: it being impossible for a company to march correctly in line while there is in the ranks a single individual whose shoulders are not square to the front.

Q. 9.—How should the men be instructed to march?

A.—In marching, each man must maintain the position of the head and body above referred to; the movement of the leg must spring from the haunch, and be free and natural; both knees should be kept straight (except while the leg is being carried from rear to front); the foot must be raised sufficiently high to clear the ground without grazing it, be carried straight to the front, and (without being drawn back) placed softly on the ground, so as not to shake or jerk the body.

Q. 10.—To what must the rear-rank men particularly attend?

A.—To accurately preserving their distances and covering.

Q. 11.—How is the dressing kept, while the men are marching in line?

A.—By the light touch of the files to the pivot (or directing) flank, and by that alone.

Q. 12.—How is the touch maintained?

A.—With the thick part of the arm immediately below the elbow.

Q. 13.—Suppose the men are marching with arms *sloped* on the shoulder furthest from the directing flank?

A.—The touch will be kept with the elbow.

Q. 14.—In addition to the usual caution “As A COMPANY IN LINE (or COLUMN)”, what caution will precede the command “SLOW (QUICK, or DOUBLE MARCH”?

A.—“THE LINE (or COLUMN) WILL ADVANCE (or RETIRE)”; on which the company leader, if the company—being as in *line*—is ordered to advance, or—being as in *column*—is ordered either to advance or retire, will select a distant and an intermediate point perpendicular to his front, on which to march when the company is put in motion.

Q. 15.—Why does not the company leader select marching points when the company being as in *line* is ordered to *retire*?

A.—Because in that case he will march in the proper front rank; and his covering-serjeant will be responsible for the direction.

Q. 16.—At about what distance should the marching points be; and why should there be two?

A.—The distant point should be about 150 yards, the intermediate point about 70 yards, distant. Two points are the smallest number on which it is possible to march.

Q. 17.—Suppose the company is ordered to retire, and there is a blank file?

A.—The uncovered front-rank man will, when the company has been faced about, step up in line with the proper rear rank.

Q. 18.—When a company standing in line with ordered arms is marched off in slow, quick, or double time, how will the rear rank step off; and why?

A.—They will make their first pace a short one, to give sufficient room for their rifles, which will be trailed as they step off.

Q. 19.—If the men are marched off when standing in line at the ‘shoulder’, to what position do they bring their rifles?

A.—To the ‘slope’; except when the word is “SLOW MARCH”, in which case they will remain at the ‘shoulder’.

Q. 20.—What distinction is made in the case of *Riflemen*?

A.—Whether standing at the ‘shoulder’ or the ‘order’, if their swords are unfixed, they will *trail* as they step off either in slow, quick, or double time: if their swords are fixed, they will step off in slow or quick time at the ‘shoulder’, in double time at the ‘slope’.

Q. 21.—Suppose men standing with ordered, or shoulderered, arms are directed to take any named number of paces to the front?

A. If at the ‘order’, they will move with their arms at the ‘short trail’, returning to the ‘order’ when they halt: if at the ‘shoulder’, will remain so. The same rule applies to *Riflemen*.

Q. 22.—While the company is marching in line, where will the instructor frequently place himself?

A.—In rear of the directing flank, that being the point whence he can best ascertain whether the company is marching direct to its front.

Q. 23.—In what will the company be practised, while marching in line?

A.—In marking time at slow, quick, and double time; in stepping out, stepping short, and changing feet, both in slow and quick time; and in the diagonal march.

Q. 24.—In order that the company may *mark time*, what command will be given?

A.—“**MARK TIME**”.

Q. 25.—Will the foot which is advancing when that word is given, complete its pace?

A.—Yes: after which, the regular cadence will be continued without ground being gained.

Q. 26.—What command will be given when the men are to resume the regular pace of 30 inches?

A.—“**FORWARD**”.

Q. 27.—How is time marked in each cadence?

A.—In the *slow*, each foot alternately is thrown out and brought back square with the other, the body being kept steady; in the *quick*, the feet are raised alternately about 3 inches from the ground; in the *double*, time is marked as in the *quick*, except that the feet will be raised higher, the knees being more bent and the toes depressed while the foot is off the ground.

Q. 28.—What is the word of command for marking time from the halt?

A.—“**MARK TIME. SLOW (QUICK, or DOUBLE)**”.

Q. 29.—To what position will the men bring their rifles, when ordered to mark time from the halt?

A.—The rules given in the A. to Q. 19, 20, apply equally to this case.

Q. 30.—When is *stepping out* necessary; and what is the length of pace taken when the command “**STEP OUT**” is given?

A.—When a temporary exertion to the present front is required. On the word “**STEP OUT**”, each man will

lengthen his pace to 33 inches, by leaning rather forward but without altering the cadence.

Q. 31.—What should the men be warned against, in stepping out?

A.—Against quickening the proper time of marching.

Q. 32.—To resume the ordinary pace of 30 inches, what command will be given?

A.—“SLOW” if the men are moving in slow time; “QUICK” if they are moving in quick.

Q. 33.—What are the men apt to do, on receiving the word “SLOW” or “QUICK”?

A.—To slacken the time.

Q. 34.—Is the word “STEP OUT” ever given to men marching in double time?

A.—No.

Q. 35.—When is *stepping short* useful, and what command is given in order to march by that step?

A.—When a slight check is required; the command being “STEP SHORT”.

Q. 36.—Will each man step short the instant that word is given?

A.—No: he will take a full pace with the foot which was advanced when the command was given, and will then step short.

Q. 37.—What is the length of pace in *stepping short*?

A.—Ten inches.

Q. 38.—What are men apt to do, when ordered to step short?

A.—To slacken the time.

Q. 39.—To resume the full pace, what command will be given?

A.—“FORWARD”.

Q. 40.—What is the object of *changing feet* in marching; and how is it done?

A.—It may be required when any part of a battalion, or a single soldier, is stepping with a different foot from the rest. On the word “**CHANGE FEET**”, the advanced foot will complete its pace, and the ball of the rear foot be brought up quickly to the heel of the advanced one, which will instantly make another step forward so that the cadence will not be lost.

Q. 41.—What command is given when a company on the march is to take ground diagonally to a flank?

A.—“**RIGHT, or LEFT, HALF TURN**”, according to the flank to which ground is to be taken.

Q. 42.—To which flank do the men touch during the diagonal march?

A.—They no longer keep the touch, but march in echelon with each other. Each man will glance his eye to the directing flank and will regulate his pace so as—in taking ground, for instance, to the right—to keep his right shoulder always behind the left shoulder of his neighbour on that side, taking care that his neighbour's head conceals from him the remainder of the rank.

Q. 43.—The leading flank, then, will direct?

A.—Yes; for the time being.

Q. 44.—If a company in column takes ground, by the diagonal march, to the reverse flank, will the captain and covering-serjeant change to that flank?

A.—No; they will remain on the proper pivot flank, unless ordered to change; the lieutenant moving up on the reverse flank to lead.

Q. 45.—What caution should be given to the rear-rank men, in the diagonal march?

A.—They must be cautioned to preserve their relative positions with their front-rank men, so that when halted and fronted, they may be found to cover correctly.

Q. 46.—When sufficient ground has been gained to the flank, what command will be given?

A.—“**FRONT TURN**”.

Q. 47.—In what proportion does the diagonal march gain ground to a flank, and to the front?

A.—For every 10 paces a company takes diagonally, it will gain about 7 paces to the front and 7 paces to the flank inclined to. The same distance will be gained, therefore, in each direction.

Q. 48.—What other mode is there of gaining ground in a diagonal direction to a flank?

A.—The echelon march of subdivisions or sections. (See Section XV.)

Q. 49.—Is it always necessary to halt the company, in order to change the time of marching?

A.—No; the pace may be changed, without halting, from slow to quick, and from quick to slow time; from quick to double, and from double to quick.

Q. 50.—May not the degree of marching be changed from double to slow, or from slow to double?

A.—Not without first halting the men, or giving "QUICK".

Q. 51.—What command is given in order to change the degree of marching?

A.—"SLOW", "QUICK", or "DOUBLE", as the case may be.

Q. 52.—If men marching in slow time at the 'shoulder' are ordered to break into quick time, or when marching in quick time at the 'slope' are ordered to take up the slow time, will they remain at the 'shoulder' or 'slope', as the case may be?

A.—In the former case they will come to the 'slope' as they take the first pace in the quick time: in the latter, they will remain at the 'slope'.

Q. 53.—Against what should the soldier be cautioned, in the double march?

A.—Against taking less than 36 inches at each pace: for unless habituated to that length of pace he will acquire the habit of a short trot.

Q. 54.—In the double march, what will be the position of the arm not carrying the rifle?

A.—It will be raised as high as the waist; the elbow carried back, the fist clenched, and the flat part of the arm close to the side.

Q. 55.—When the word "HALT" is given, or the men are ordered (by the word "QUICK") to break into quick time, what will be done?

A.—The arm will be dropped, and the fingers extended into the usual position.

Q. 56.—How may men be ordered to turn when on the march?

A.—To the right or left; to make a half-turn to the right or left; or to turn to the right (or left) about.

Q. 57.—In how many paces does the soldier turn to the right-about or left-about; and what will he do after turning?

A.—In three short paces, without losing the cadence. Having completed the turn, he will at once move off in the opposite direction to that in which he was previously marching, the fourth pace being a full one of 30 inches.

Q. 58.—The word "FORWARD", then, will not be given after turning about?

A.—No; nor in any case after turning.

Q. 59.—Can men turn to the right-about or left-about with sloped or trailed arms?

A.—No: they will, therefore, if at the 'slope' shoulder, if at the 'trail' will bring the rifle to a perpendicular position, on the 1st pace of the turn; and will slope, or trail, again on the 4th pace.

Q. 60.—How should the command to turn be given?

A.—The men should always be ordered to turn to the right as the left foot is placed on the ground; and *vice versa*.

Q. 61.—When men receive the word "FRONT TURN", how do they obey it?

A.—By turning to that hand which is nearest their proper front.

Q. 62.—On the word “HALT”, what is done?

A.—Every man completes the pace he is taking, and then brings up the rear foot in line with the advanced foot.

Q. 63.—Will the men then correct their dressing?

A.—No; unless ordered to dress, they will remain steady in whatever position they may be.

Q. 64.—In what case will the rear rank have to take a longer pace when coming to the halt?

A.—When the men stepped off at the ‘trail’. (See Q. 18, 20.)

Q. 65.—To what position are the rifles brought, on the word “HALT”?

A.—If the men are at the ‘slope’, they come to the ‘shoulder’; if at the ‘trail’, to the ‘order’.

Q. 66.—Should the single word “HALT” ever be given to a company marching to the rear?

A. No: men should never stand facing to the rear*; and the word should therefore be “HALT, FRONT”.

Q. 67.—When will the uncovered proper front-rank man, if there is a blank file (Q. 17), resume his place in the front rank?

A.—On the word “HALT, FRONT” or “FRONT TURN”.

Section V.—The Back Step.

(F. E., pp. 35, 48.)

Q. 1.—In what time is the back step taken?

A.—In slow time; except in wheeling backwards, when it may be taken in either slow or quick time.

* This remark does not, of course, apply to the cases mentioned in Sec. IX., Q. 18, 21.

Q. 2.—What command is given when men are to step back?

A.—“STEP BACK. SLOW MARCH”.

Q. 3.—When the command “HALT” is given, is the foot in rear to be brought up in a line with that in front?

A.—No; the foot in front must be brought back square with the other.

Q. 4.—If considerable ground is to be taken to the rear, would it not be better for the men to face about, instead of stepping back?

A.—Yes; the back step is only intended to be applied for a very few paces.

Q. 5.—What faults are men apt to commit in stepping back?

A.—Looking on the ground, leaning back, shortening the pace, and quickening the time.

Section VI.—The Side (or Closing) Step.

(F. E., pp. 43, 98.)

Q. 1.—When is the side (or closing) step necessary?

A.—When a very small distance is to be gained to a flank.

Q. 2.—Describe the step?

A.—On the word “MARCH”, the file on the named flank carries the outer foot *ten inches* in the named direction, then closes the other foot to it, heels touching, and so on: each of the other files conforms to the pace of that file, every man carrying his right or left foot to that of the man next to him in the direction to which the company is closing.

Q. 3.—To what points should attention be given, in closing by the side step?

A.—Care should be taken that the shoulders are kept square, and the paces made in a direct line to the flank.

Q. 4.—Are the men to turn their heads in the direction to which they are closing?

A.—No: the face is to be kept perfectly square to the front.

Q. 5.—To which hand will the men necessarily touch?

A.—To the right in closing to the right; and *vice versa*.

Q. 6.—How are the knees kept in closing?

A.—Straight; except on rough or broken ground, when they must necessarily be bent.

Q. 7.—In what time is the side step always taken?

A.—In *quick* time.

Q. 8.—How many paces, then, would be taken in a minute, in closing to the right or left?

A.—Precisely the same number as would be taken to the front in the same time: *viz.* 110.

C. Q. 9.—If the company is one of a battalion in *column*, and—in order to correct covering—is cautioned to close to its right or left, how will its captain proceed?

A.—He will remain on the pivot flank of his company.

Q. 10.—Will he close with the company?

A.—Yes; unless he has, previously to the caution, taken up fresh covering, in which case he will stand fast and the company will close to him.

Q. 11.—Suppose the company is one of a battalion in *line*, and—in order to correct distance—is directed to close to its right or left, how will its commander proceed?

A.—That will depend on the battalion commander's caution.

Q. 12.—If the company is cautioned to close a specified number of paces?

A.—Its commander will remain in the line.

Q. 13.—If it is cautioned to close *without* the number of paces being specified ? C.

A.—He will move out, and place himself 3 paces in front of that flank of his company which is nearest to the centre of the line ; facing towards the men.

Q. 14.—Suppose the closing is to the *left*, will the captain, in moving opposite to the left flank of the company, pass by the front or by the rear ?

A.—By the front : see p. 5, Q. 31.

Q. 15.—Why is he to place himself opposite the inner flank of his company ?

A.—In order to halt it at the proper time.

Q. 16.—Will he remain halted while his company closes ?

A.—No : he will close with it.

Q. 17.—After halting his company, will he, if in front of its left, pass by the front or by the rear, to resume his post in line ?

A.—By the rear.

Q. 18.—When the captain steps to the front, who will preserve his place in the line ? c.

A.—His covering-serjeant.

Q. 19.—Suppose a *wing* of a battalion is cautioned by the commander to close, no number of paces being named, will the captains move out ? C.

A.—No ; unless the numbers of the companies are specified, the captains will remain in their places.

Q. 20.—By whom, in that case, will the word “HALT” be given ?

A.—By the battalion commander.

Q. 21.—When a company of a battalion in line closes to its left, a specified number of paces, to let files of its own come up on its right, do its leader and his covering-serjeant close with it ? C. c.

A.—No ; they remain halted.

Q. 22.—Do they remain halted, when, in order to admit files on the right of their company, the company on their right closes to its right?

A.—No ; they close with the company on their right.

Q. 23.—When do they close with their own company?

A.—Always when closing to the centre of the battalion.

Q. 24.—Suppose a company at drill is closing ‘as in line’, no number of paces named, how will the captain know when to halt it ?

A.—A point will be placed by the drill instructor.

Section VII.—A Company as in Line wheeling into Column.

(F. E., pp. 74, 84.)

Q. 1.—What are the faults which men should be careful to avoid, in wheeling?

A.—Crowding on the standing (or pivot) flank, stooping forward, looking down, and quickening the time.

Q. 2.—To which flank should the front-rank men look, and to which preserve the touch, during the wheel?

A.—They should turn their eyes to the wheeling (or outward) flank, and touch to the standing (or pivot) flank ; resisting any pressure coming from the former, yielding to any that may come from the latter.

Q. 3.—Is there not one man of the front rank who does *not* look outwards?

A.—Yes : the man on the wheeling flank looks inwards ; and becomes a kind of base for the others to conform to during the wheel, so as to maintain uniformity of front.

Q. 4.—How will the outward man, and the remainder of the front rank, step during the wheel?

A.—The man on the wheeling flank will step the regular pace of 30 inches: each of the other men will take the same *number* of paces as the flank man, but will diminish the *length* of his pace in proportion as he is near the standing flank.

Q. 5.—How does the rear rank wheel?

A.—The rear-rank men follow their respective front-rank men; keeping their proper distances and covering.

Q. 6.—What term is applied to the front-rank man on the flank on which a wheel is made?

A.—He is called ‘the pivot man’.

Q. 7.—What is the difference between wheeling on a ‘halted pivot’ and wheeling on a ‘moveable pivot from the halt’?

A.—In the former case, the pivot man *faces* into the new direction on the caution; in the latter case, instead of facing on the caution, he brings his inner shoulder round with the rest, circling round the wheeling point with very short paces.

Q. 8.—When is the latter description of wheel used; and what is the caution for it?

A.—When a halted company is required to wheel so that “FORWARD” or “HALT” may be given at any period of the wheel. The caution will be “ON THE MOVE, RIGHT (or LEFT) WHEEL”.

Q. 9.—When a company as in line is required to wheel into column, on a halted pivot, what will be the caution?

A.—“OPEN COLUMN RIGHT (or LEFT) IN FRONT”. (See Section XLI.)

Q. 10.—On that caution, what will be done by the pivot man?

A.—He will, as on every occasion of wheeling on a halted pivot (Q. 7), face to the new front.

Q. 11.—Will his rear-rank man move ?

A.—No.

C. c. Q. 12.—Who else will move on the caution : supposing it to be “OPEN COLUMN *RIGHT IN FRONT*”?

A.—The captain, who will move out and place himself one pace in front of the centre of the company ; and the covering-serjeant, who will run to the rear to mark where the right of the company will rest when the wheel is completed.

Q. 13.—How will the captain face, when he moves opposite the centre of the company ?

A.—To the front.

Q. 14.—How will the covering-serjeant give his point ?

A.—He will stand with shouldered arms, raising his left arm from the elbow, and facing (like the pivot man) to the new front.

Q. 15.—When a battalion in line is cautioned to break into open column, does the covering-serjeant of each company act as above described ?

A.—No : only the coverer of whichever of the two flank companies will be the leading one of the column. (*See Sec. XLI.*)

Q. 16.—What command will follow the caution “OPEN COLUMN, *RIGHT IN FRONT*”; and why ?

A.—The command “*RIGHT-ABOUT FACE*”: it being a rule that whenever a company is to wheel back (*i. e.* to the rear of the alignment it occupies) more than the *eighth of a circle*, it will be wheeled rear rank in front.

Q. 17.—Will the rear-rank man of the pivot file face about with the rest ?

A.—Yes.

C. Q. 18.—What command will follow “*RIGHT-ABOUT FACE*”; and its effect ?

A.—“*RIGHT WHEEL: QUICK MARCH*”; on which the men will step off, and the captain will move to the left (or pivot) flank of the company.

Q. 19.—By whom will the company be halted and fronted, when it has wheeled the quarter circle? C.

A.—By the captain; who will give “*Halt, front: dress*”, and immediately fall in on the pivot flank, and look to his front.

Q. 20.—What rule should he observe in giving that word; and why?

A.—The word should not be given till the company has wheeled well back; in order that the men may dress forward instead of having to dress back.

Q. 21.—Will not the captain, before falling in, dress the company?

A.—No; in column the men correct their own dressing; and the captain looks to his covering* without regarding them.

Q. 22.—When will the lieutenant move across to L. c. his place, and the coverer take post, in column?

A.—The former during the wheel; the latter on the captain’s word “*Dress*”.

Q. 23.—When will the supernumerary rank correct E. their distance from three paces to one pace from the rear rank?

A.—On the captain’s word “*Dress*”.

Q. 24.—Suppose a company standing in line is cautioned to wheel into column *left* in front: who will be the pivot man, and how will he face on the caution?

A.—The front-rank man on the right of the company, who will face to his left.

Q. 25.—To which hand will the company wheel, after being faced about?

A.—To the left.

Q. 26.—What other difference will there be, in the C. L. case of forming column *left* in front? c.

A.—The lieutenant will not have to change his flank during the wheel; the coverer will mark the *left* of the company; and the captain will take post on the *right* when in column. (*See p. 5, Q. 27, 29.*)

* i. e. when, in Battalion, in actual column of companies.

Q. 27.—When a company in line *on the march* is required to wheel into column, what command will be given?

A.—“COMPANY: RIGHT WHEEL”, or “LEFT WHEEL”, according as the intention is to form column right or left in front.

C. L. Q. 28.—How will the captain, coverer, and lieutenant get to their places in column?

A.—If the wheel is to the right, the captain will move straight to his front at a short pace during the wheel, so as to meet the left of the company as it completes the quarter circle; taking post on the word “FORWARD”: the lieutenant and covering-serjeant changing their flanks during the wheel. If the wheel is to the left, the captain will simply wheel with the company; the lieutenant correcting his distance from the rear rank, and the covering-serjeant falling back to his place in column, during the wheel.

Q. 29.—If a company as in line, *retiring*, were wheeled a quarter circle to the right or left, would the officers and covering-serjeant follow the directions given in the last Answer?

A.—No: if such a movement were ordered, they would retain their positions; so as to be in their proper places when “RE-FORM LINE” (*i. e.* to the rear) is given.

Q. 30.—When a company in line, halted, is ordered to wheel to the right or left “ON THE MOVE”, when does the pivot man face?

A.—The pivot man will not face at all; but will commence circling round with the rest of the company on the word “MARCH”. (*See Q. 7.*)

Q. 31.—Will the captain, coverer, and supernumeraries, also, proceed as when the wheel into column is made *on the march*?

A.—Yes: in every respect.

Q. 32.—State the immediate object of the word “ON THE MOVE” preceding the caution, when a halted company as in line is to wheel into column?

A.—That word will enable the drill instructor to give "FORWARD" when the quarter circle has been wheeled. Without that word, the pivot man would, on the caution, face to his right or left, and his being stationary would prevent the company getting "FORWARD". (See Q. 7, 8.)

Q. 33.—In what case is the wheel on a *moveable* pivot from a halted line into column, inapplicable?

A.—When it is required to break into a column the pivot flanks of which are to be on the present alignment.

Q. 34.—When will the supernumerary rank gain its proper distance from the rear rank, if the wheel is made on a moveable pivot? E.

A.—During the wheel.

Q. 35.—To which flank do companies (subdivisions, or sections), when in column, cover and dress?

A.—Invariably to the pivot flank. (See p. 5, Q. 29.)

Section VIII.—*A Company as in Column wheeling into Line.*

(F. E., pp. 73, 83.)

Q. 1.—When a company as in column is required to wheel into line on a halted pivot, what caution is given; and how will the pivot man proceed?

A.—The caution will be "LEFT (or Right) WHEEL INTO LINE", according as the supposed column is right or left in front. The pivot man will face, as usual, to the new front, and will also raise his right (or, if a Rifleman, his left) arm horizontally from the elbow.

Q. 2.—Will the rear-rank man of the pivot file stand fast, as when the company is to wheel back?

A.—No; it is a rule that whenever a company is cautioned to wheel forward, the rear-rank man of the pivot file will uncover, by taking a pace to the rear and then a side-pace of 21 inches towards the reverse flank.

Q. 3.—Why does the rear-rank man of the pivot file uncover, and the pivot man raise his arm, when a company is to wheel forward and not when it is to wheel back?

A.—The rule in question, though (for the sake of uniformity of practice) made applicable to all occasions of wheeling forward from the halt, has special reference to the case of a battalion in open column wheeling into line (*see Section XLVIII.*) : when it is necessary that the pivot men should be distinctly seen by the field officer who has to dress them ; and that each captain while dressing his company should be able to see the extent of its front.

C. c. Q. 4.—Suppose *right* is in front : who, besides the pivot file, will move on the caution “LEFT WHEEL INTO LINE”?

A.—The captain will place himself one pace in front of the 2nd file from the left of the company, facing to the front ; and the covering-serjeant will run to the front and mark the spot where the right of the company will rest when the wheel is completed.

L. E. Q. 5.—Will not the supernumerary rank step back, so as to be at its proper distance from the rear rank when the wheel is completed ?

A.—No ; it will gain that distance during the wheel.

c. Q. 6.—How will the covering-serjeant give his point?

A.—He will stand with his rifle at the ‘shoulder’, facing to the new front, and raising his left arm ; aligned with the pivot man.

Q. 7.—When, in battalion, an open column of companies is cautioned to wheel into line, does the coverer of each company act as above described ?

A.—No : the coverer of the leading company only.

C. Q. 8.—On the word “MARCH” the men, of course, step off ; how will the captain move ?

A.—He will turn towards the men, and move back round the pivot man, to be ready to dress the company from the left.

Q. 9.—Is it a rule that a company wheeling on a halted pivot from column into line is dressed from its pivot flank?

A.—An invariable rule.

Q. 10.—By whom, and when, will the company be halted?

A.—By the captain; the word "*Halt*" being given when the wheeling flank is 2 paces from the covering-serjeant to whom it is wheeling up.

Q. 11.—Why *two* paces?

A.—For the same reason that the company is allowed to wheel well back before being halted and fronted in column; *viz.* that the dressing may be *forward*.

Q. 12.—What word will follow "*Halt*", and what pause should be allowed between the two words?

A.—The word "*Dress*", without any pause.

Q. 13.—Is any further word given by the captain?

A.—After dressing the company he will give "*Eyes front*", and change to the right flank, his proper post in line.

Q. 14.—By the front, or by the rear?

A.—By the rear; according to the general rule, the only exceptions to which have already been mentioned. (See p. 5, Q. 31.)

Q. 15.—When will the lieutenant change his flank, L. c. the supernumerary rank gain its distance of 3 paces from the rear rank, and the coverer fall back to his proper place in line?

A.—The lieutenant will change his flank, and the supernumerary rank gain its distance, during the wheel; the coverer will take post on the captain's word "*Eyes front*".

Q. 16.—How does a company standing in column *left* in front wheel into line?

A.—On the same principle as when right is in front: the pivot man facing, and the company wheeling, to the *right*; the coverer marking the left flank of the company, and the captain dressing from the right.

Q. 17.—When does the pivot man of a company wheeled from column into line, drop his arm; and when does his rear-rank man regain his place?

A.—The former, on the captain's word "*Eyes front*": the latter, during the wheel.

C. Q. 18.—When a company wheels *on a moveable pivot* from column into line, how does the captain, if (right being in front) he is on the left, get to his place in line?

A.—By moving straight to his front at a short pace, during the wheel; as in the same description of wheel from line into column.

L. c. Q. 19.—The lieutenant, and covering-serjeant?

A.—If the column is right in front, the lieutenant will change his flank; if left in front, will correct his distance from the rear rank; during the wheel. The coverer will get to his place at the same time.

Section IX.—A Company wheeling any given number of paces, on either flank, from the Halt.

(F. E., p. 75.)

Q. 1.—Will the preparatory caution for this movement be "As a COMPANY IN LINE" or "IN COLUMN"?

A.—The movement being a practice for the battalion movements of a line wheeling into echelon on fixed pivots (*Sec. LXII.*), and also of an open column forming line from the halt on a named company (*Sec. XLIX.*), either caution may be given.

Q. 2.—What word will next be given: and how will the pivot man proceed?

A.—The caution "— PACES, RIGHT (or LEFT) WHEEL", or "— PACES, ON THE LEFT (or RIGHT) BACKWARD WHEEL", according as the company is required to wheel forward or backward: on which the pivot man will face as the company will face when the wheel is completed.

Q. 3.—Will the pivot man raise his arm when he faces ; and will his rear-rank man uncover ?

A.—Only if the wheel is to be forward. (See Section VIII., Q. 2.)

Q. 4.—Who else will move on the word “ WHEEL ”?

A.—The covering-serjeant will place himself with his back to the 8th file from the pivot, in front of that file if the wheel is to be forward, in rear of it if the wheel is to be backward : and, without any further command, will take the named number of paces and then halt ; or, if the paces were taken to the rear, will halt and face about. The captain will place himself on the pivot flank, facing inwards, and correct the pivot man’s position.

C. c.

Q. 5.—What is meant by the pivot flank in this case ?

A.—Whether the company is as in line, or as in column (right or left in front), that flank on which the wheel is made, is, for the time being, termed the pivot ; and the opposite the reverse ; flank.

Q. 6.—Will the coverer take his paces *straight* to the front (or rear, as the case may be) ?

c.

A.—No ; he will incline in a circular direction towards the pivot flank, so as to take the paces on the circumference of the circle of which the pivot man is the centre.

Q. 7.—Why are the paces measured from the *eighth* file from the pivot ?

A.—Because that file wheeling 8 paces will complete the quarter circle ; wheeling 4 paces, the eighth of a circle ; wheeling 2 paces, the sixteenth of a circle. It is therefore the most convenient file from which to measure, and for the sake of uniformity of practice is always selected for that purpose.

Q. 8.—The coverer and pivot man being properly placed, what command will be given ?

A.—“ *QUICK MARCH* ”; on which the company will wheel the number of paces specified in the caution.

Q. 9.—By whom, and when, will the company be halted ?

C.

A.—By the captain ; who, when the 8th file reaches the covering-serjeant, will give "*Halt, dress*".

Q. 10.—Will the captain then fall in at once?

A.—No : he will proceed to dress the company from the pivot flank, taking care not to move either the 8th or the pivot file ; and will then give "*Eyes front*" and fall in.

Q. 11.—Why is the precaution just mentioned, necessary ?

A.—Because when the companies of a battalion wheel into echelon, extreme accuracy is required, in order that they may move correctly on their respective lines of direction.

C. c. Q. 12.—Where will the captain and coverer take post, when the former has given "*Eyes front*" : and why ?

A.—The captain will take post on the pivot, the coverer on the reverse, flank of the company : those being their respective places when, in battalion, companies are in echelon. (*See Secs. XLIX., LXII.*)

Q. 13.—When the wheel is to be *more than the eighth of a circle*, what will be done after the caution and before the word "*QUICK MARCH*" ?

A.—The company will be faced about. (*See p. 26, Q. 16.*)

Q. 14.—Instead, therefore, of the caution "*ON THE — BACKWARD WHEEL*" the word will in such a case, be "*RIGHT-ABOUT FACE*" ?

A.—*Both* these words will be given : first the caution, then "*RIGHT-ABOUT FACE*."

Q. 15.—Why ?

A.—In order that the pivot man may face, and the coverer take his paces.

c. Q. 16.—Will the coverer, having taken his paces, remain facing to the rear ?

A.—No ; he will face about.

C. Q. 17.—What will the captain's word be ?

A.—He will necessarily give "*Halt, front, dress*".

Q. 18.—Suppose the drill instructor orders the company to face about *before he gives the caution* “— PACES RIGHT (or LEFT) WHEEL”: what will it be considered, and what difference will there be in the captain's word of command?

A.—The company will be considered as one of the thrown-back companies of a battalion in line changing front by echelon on fixed pivots (*see Sec. LXII.*); and the captain's word, as the eighth file reaches the coverer, will be “*Halt, dress*”, the company thus remaining rear rank in front.

Q. 19.—Which will be the pivot man, and how will the coverer act, in that case?

c.

A.—The proper rear-rank man of the pivot file will be the pivot man; the coverer will take his paces to the proper rear, and will *not* face about when he halts.

Q. 20.—Will the pivot man raise his arm when he faces, and will his (present) rear-rank man uncover?

A.—Yes; in accordance with the general rule when a wheel is to be forward.

Q. 21.—Suppose the company were faced about, then wheeled *back* to the coverer, and (as in the last case) left standing rear rank in front?

A.—It would be considered as one of the thrown-back companies of an open column forming line on a rear company. (*See Sec. XLIX.*)

Q. 22.—Which would be the pivot man; and how would the covering-serjeant take his paces?

c.

A.—The proper front-rank man of the pivot file; the coverer would take his paces to the proper front, and then halt and face about.

Q. 23.—In each of those cases, when does the pivot man face in the required direction?

A.—On the caution (“— PACES, &c.”) given after the company has been faced about.

Q. 24.—In fact, then, the formation will, after the company has been faced about, proceed as if the company were standing front (instead of rear) rank in front?

A.—Yes; in every respect.

Q. 25.—How many paces will a company have to wheel, in order to complete the *quarter* circle, the *eighth* of a circle, and the *sixteenth* of a circle, respectively?

A.—The same number of paces, *half* the number of paces, or a *quarter* of the number of paces, that it contains files.*

Q. 26.—In changing the front of a line at *right angles* to the old line, by echelon; and in forming line from column to the front, from the halt, by echelon; how many paces forward (or back, as the case may be) will all the companies, except that of formation, be wheeled?

A.—Four paces, i.e. the *eighth* of a circle.

Section X.—A Company wheeling on its Centre.

(F. E., p. 79.)

Q. 1.—When a company is to wheel on its centre, will it stand as in line or as in column?

A.—As in line. (See Q. 13.)

C. Q. 2.—What will be the drill instructor's caution, and its effect?

A—“THE COMPANY WILL WHEEL ON THE CENTRE TO THE RIGHT (or LEFT, or —— PACES TO THE RIGHT or LEFT)”: on which the captain will run out, and placing himself 3 paces in front of the centre of the company, facing towards the men, will give the caution “*On the centre, right (or left) wheel*” or “*On the centre, —— paces right (or left) wheel*”.

* The space occupied by a file is 21 inches, and the length of a pace 30 inches. Since $\frac{4}{5}$, the ratio between the space occupied by the front of a file and the length of a pace, is not very different from the ratio of the radius to the quadrant; and since circumferences are to one another as their radii; the number of paces taken by the outer man of a company wheeling the quarter circle, will be nearly equal to the number of files of which the company is composed.”—*Aide Mémoire*, p. 504.

Q. 3.—Which will be the pivot man ; and how will he act on the captain's caution ?

A.—The front-rank man on the inner flank of the subdivision that is to wheel forward will be the pivot ; acting, as will also his rear-rank man, as in all other cases of wheeling forward from the halt. (*See p. 29, Q. 2.*)

Q. 4.—Where will the covering-serjeant place himself, on the word "*Wheel*"?

A.—If the company is to wheel a quarter circle, i. e. if the paces are not named, he will move out and align himself with the pivot man, marking the spot where the outward flank of the subdivision that is to wheel forward will rest. If the number of paces is specified, he will step them from the 8th file from the centre, counting towards the flank that is to wheel forward.

Q. 5.—How will he hold his rifle ; and will he raise his left arm ?

A.—He will hold his rifle at the 'shoulder' ; raising his left arm in the case of the quarter-circle wheel only.

Q. 6.—What command will then be given ; and by whom ?

A.—"*Quick March*", by the captain.

Q. 7.—May he not first have to give another command ?

A.—Yes : the rule laid down in Sec. VII. (Q. 16), for a *company*, is equally applicable to a subdivision (or section) exceeding 12 files. If, therefore, the subdivision that is to wheel back exceeds 12 files, and the wheel is to be more than the eighth of a circle, the captain before giving "*Quick March*" will order it to "*Right-about face*".

Q. 8.—To which flank will the men touch, and to which will they glance their eyes, during the wheel ?

A.—With the exception of the man on the outer flank of each subdivision, they will (as usual) feel to the inner, and look to the outer, flank.

Q. 9.—How will the outward flank man of each subdivision step, and look, during the wheel ?

c.

C.

A.—They will both look inwards ; the outward man of the subdivision that is wheeling back stepping a full pace of 30 inches, the man on the outer flank of the other subdivision regulating his pace so as to keep the company in line.

C. Q. 10.—To which flank will the captain move during the wheel ; and what word will he give when it is completed ?

A.—He will move to the flank that is wheeling forward ; and, the wheel being completed, will give “*Halt*” or “*Halt, front*”, as the case may be.

c. Q. 11.—What is done on the word “*Halt*” or “*Halt, front*”?

A.—The coverer and senior supernumerary serjeant give base points, at arms’ length from the front of the company : the former on the flank that wheeled forward, the latter on the opposite flank.

Q. 12.—How do they give their points ?

A.—They face inwards (*i.e.* towards each other), with their rifles at the ‘recover’, and their inner arm extended with the fist clenched.*

Q. 13.—What is the company considered in this movement ?

A.—As the (central) company of formation of a battalion in line changing front by echelon, at an angle less than a right angle, on fixed pivots. See Section LXII.

C. Q. 14.—When, and how, will the captain dress the company ?

A.—As soon as the base points are placed, he will give the word “*Dress*” and dress the company up to their hands ; he will then give “*Eyes front*”, and take post in line.

c. Q. 15.—The coverer and supernumerary serjeant taking post at the same time ?

* For an explanation of the ‘base of formation,’ and the reason of the base points facing inwards, &c., see Sec. XLIX., Q. 6, 14, 64.

A. No : they will wait for the word "STEADY" from the drill instructor.

Q. 16.—Who would give that word in the corresponding battalion formation?

A.—The senior major.

Q. 17.—What degree of wheel is intended by the caution "RIGHT (or LEFT) WHEEL" given to a halted company?

A.—A quarter-circle wheel. Unless, therefore, the word "WHEEL" is preceded by "—PACES" or "ON THE MOVE", the pivot man will face to the new front, and the covering-serjeant will run out to mark where the wheeling flank of the company will rest.

Q. 18.—Should a company ever be practised in wheeling on its centre from the halt '*on the move*'?

A.—Yes. (See Sec. LXII.)

Q. 19.—Suppose the instructor cautioned the company when standing as in line to wheel on the centre "INTO COLUMN", or when standing as in column to wheel on the centre "INTO LINE", would the movement proceed as has been described in this Section?

A.—No : the captain would not repeat the instructor's caution, nor give the executive word "Quick March"; and no base points would be given on the completion of the wheel.

Q. 20.—Where would the captain place himself on the caution ; from which flank dress the company ; and how then take post?

A.—He would place himself in front of the subdivision that is to wheel forward ; dress the company (if the wheel brought it into *line*) from the flank marked by the covering-serjeant ; then take post in column or line as the case might be.

Q. 21.—In what case in battalion drill does the movement occur?

A.—In no case.

C.

Section XI.—A Company as in Line wheeling into Column of Subdivisions (or Sections).

(F. E., pp. 81, 84.)

Q. 1.—What caution will be given by the drill instructor when he intends a company in line to wheel, on fixed pivots, into column of subdivisions (or sections) : say *right* in front?

A.—“By SUBDIVISIONS (or SECTIONS), ON THE LEFT BACKWARD WHEEL” : unless the subdivisions (or sections) exceed 12 files, in which case the caution will be “OPEN COLUMN OF SUBDIVISIONS (or SECTIONS), RIGHT IN FRONT”. (See Sec. X., Q. 7.)

Q. 2.—Which will be the pivot men on whom the subdivisions (or sections) will wheel back into column : and how will they act on the caution?

A.—The left-hand men of subdivisions (or sections) ; who will face, as usual, to the new front. See p. 25, Q. 7, 10.

C. Q. 3.—Where will the captain place himself on the caution?

A.—One pace in front of the centre of that subdivision (or section) which will be the leading one, and on the pivot flank of which his post will be, in the column.

Q. 4.—How will he face?

A.—To the front.

c. Q. 5.—Who else will move on the caution?

A.—The covering-serjeant will move back to mark the spot on which the wheeling, i.e. the reverse, flank of the leading subdivision (or section) will rest in column ; standing with his rifle at the ‘shoulder’ and his left arm raised.

Q. 6.—What command will follow the caution, or (if the men are faced about) the command “RIGHT-ABOUT FACE”?

A.—“QUICK MARCH” : on which the subdivisions (or sections) will step off and commence wheeling into column.

Q. 7.—How will the captain move during the wheel ; C.
and what word will he give ?

A.—Turning to his subdivision (or section), to direct its wheel, he will incline to its left, which will become the pivot flank ; giving the word "*Halt, dress*" (or, if the men were faced about, "*Halt, front, dress*") as it is taking the last step that completes the quarter-circle wheel.

Q. 8.—By whom will the other subdivision (or each of the other sections) be halted ?

A.—The captain's word "*Halt (front), dress*" will apply to the whole company.

Q. 9.—Who will command the rear subdivision, or L.E.
each of the three rear sections ?

A.—The lieutenant will command the rear subdivision ; or, in column of sections, the 3rd section from the front. In column of sections, the ensign will command the 4th section from the front ; and if there is no other officer present, the senior supernumerary serjeant will take the 2nd section from the front.

Q. 10.—On which flank of the subdivisions (or sections) will their respective leaders be placed ; and when will they take post ?

A.—On the pivot flanks, i.e. on the left when the column is right in front, and *vice versa*. They will take post, and look to their covering, on the captain's word "*Halt (front), dress*".

Q. 11.—The men correcting their own dressing ?

A.—Yes : as in the case of a column of companies.

Q. 12.—When a company is formed in column of subdivisions, where is the ensign posted ? E.

A.—One pace in rear of the 2nd file from the reverse flank of the rear subdivision.

Q. 13.—Which will be the covering-serjeant's place in column of subdivisions or sections : and when will he take post ? c.

A.—One pace in rear of the 2nd file from the pivot

42 WHEELING INTO COLUMN OR SUBDIVISIONS (or SECTIONS).

flank of the leading subdivision (or section); where he will place himself on the captain's word "*Halt (front), dress*".

Q. 14.—May he not, however, occasionally have to take another place?

A.—Yes; if there is not a third supernumerary with the company to command the 2nd section from the front, that section will be led by the covering-serjeant, who will accordingly place himself (at the same time as the other section leaders) on its pivot flank.

C. c. Q. 15.—When will the supernumerary rank correct its distance from the rear rank?

A.—During the wheel.

Q. 16.—What will the caution be, and how will the captain and coverer proceed, if the column is to be formed *left* in front?

A.—The caution will be "BY SUBDIVISIONS (or SECTIONS), ON THE RIGHT BACKWARD WHEEL", or "OPEN COLUMN OF SUBDIVISIONS (or SECTIONS) LEFT IN FRONT", as the case may be: the captain and coverer proceeding as directed in the A. to Q. 3—5.

Q. 17.—How will a company advancing in line form an open column of subdivisions (or sections) to either flank, by wheeling on *moveable* pivots?

A.—The drill instructor will give the word "BY SUBDIVISIONS (or SECTIONS), RIGHT (or LEFT) WHEEL"; and when the subdivisions (or sections) have wheeled square into column, the word "FORWARD": or, if the wheel is to be on moveable pivots from the halt, the word will be "ON THE MOVE, BY SUBDIVISIONS", &c. (see p. 25, Q. 7, 8).

L. E. Q. 18.—If the wheel into column is made on moveable pivots, when do the supernumeraries assume the command of their respective subdivisions (or sections)?

A.—On the word "FORWARD".

C. c. Q. 19.—When, and how, will the captain and covering-serjeant move to their posts in the column?

A.—That will depend on the flank to which the wheel into column is made.

WHEELING INTO COLUMN OF SUBDIVISIONS (or SECTIONS). 43

Q. 20.—Suppose the wheel is to the right?

A.—In that case the captain marches at a short pace direct to his front, during the wheel of his subdivision or section, so as to meet its pivot flank as the drill instructor gives the word "FORWARD": his covering-serjeant moving at the same time, by the rear, to his post in the column.

Q. 21.—If the wheel is to the *left*?

A.—The captain and coverer will remain, and wheel into column, with the right subdivision (or section) of the company; and on the word "FORWARD", proceed in double time—the coverer passing by the rear—to the pivot flank of the leading subdivision (or section) of the column.

Q. 22.—If a company in line, *retiring*, were ordered by the drill instructor to wheel by subdivisions (or sections) into column rear rank in front, would the captain and supernumeraries follow the instructions given in the A. to Q. 20, 21?

A.—No. The movement—if it were ordered at all—would only be a temporary one; and much confusion would be avoided by the officers retaining their places, leaving the pivot files to cover on each other as when a company as in line is moving in echelon of sections.

Q. 23.—Suppose that, instead of "RE-FORM COMPANY", the word "COLUMN, FRONT TURN" were given?

A.—The subdivision (or section) leaders would then, as a matter of course, take their proper places in column.

Q. 24.—At what distance are the subdivisions, or sections, when in open column?

A.—The rear subdivision, or each of the rear sections, is at a distance equal to its own front from the one immediately in front of it.

Section XII.—An Open Column of Subdivisions or Sections, wheeling into Line.

(F. E., pp. 82, 84.)

Q. 1.—When a company, standing in open column of subdivisions (or sections), receives the caution “LEFT (or RIGHT) WHEEL INTO LINE”, who will move?

A.—The commanders and pivot files of subdivisions or sections; and the covering-serjeant.

C.L.E. Q. 2.—How do the commanders and pivot files of subdivisions (or sections) proceed?

A.—The captain places himself one pace in front of the 2nd file from the pivot flank of the rear subdivision (or section) of the column; the other leaders fall back into the supernumerary rank. The pivot file of each subdivision (or section) will follow the rule given in Sec. VIII. (Q. 1, 2) for the pivot file of a *company* about to wheel forward from the halt.

c. Q. 3.—The covering-serjeant?

A.—Will move to that point where the outward or wheeling flank of the leading subdivision (or section) will rest in line; standing with his rifle at the ‘shoulder’ and his left arm raised.

C. Q. 4.—When the word “QUICK MARCH” is given, how does the captain proceed?

A.—Turning towards the men, that he may observe and direct the wheel, he moves round the pivot man; and 2 paces before the two subdivisions (or four sections) have completed the quarter-circle wheel, gives “*Halt, dress*”, and proceeds to dress the company.

Q. 5.—Does each subdivision (or section), in dressing, feel in as usual to its pivot man?

A.—No; the whole will feel in to the pivot man of that subdivision (or section) which was the rear one of the column, who will become the pivot man of the company.

Q. 6.—When will the pivot men drop their arms?

SUBDIVISIONS (*or sections*) WHEELING INTO LINE. 45

A.—The pivot man of the front subdivision, or of each except the rear section, of the column will drop his arm on the word "*dress*". The pivot man of the company will keep his arm raised till "*Eyes front*" is given.

Q. 7.—When will the supernumeraries get to their L. E. places, and the covering-serjeant take post, in line?

A.—The supernumeraries during the wheel : the coverer, when the captain has given "*Eyes front*" and (having, if the column was right in front, changed his flank) has fallen in on the right of the company.

Q. 8.—If an open column of subdivisions (or sections), say right in front, *on the march* is required to wheel into line, what command will be given ; and how will the captain and coverer get to their places ? C. c.

A.—The command will be "COMPANY, LEFT WHEEL INTO LINE", and when in line "FORWARD". The captain will move straight on to his front at a short pace during the wheel, so as to meet the right of the subdivision (or section) he was leading and to be in his place on the right of the company when "FORWARD" is given : the coverer at the same time will move to his place, by the rear as usual.

Q. 9.—If the column is *left* in front when ordered to wheel into line ; how will the captain and coverer move ?

A.—The captain will turn to the right-about on the command, and will move straight across to the right of the company while the subdivisions or sections are wheeling into line. The coverer will, at the same time, move round the reverse flank (or flanks) of the rear subdivision (or sections) to his place in line.

Q. 10.—How will the other subdivision leader, or L. E. each of the other section leaders, act ?

A.—Whether right or left is in front, he will fall back on the command ; and will move, during the wheel, to his place in the supernumerary rank.

Section XIII.—Marching past in Slow and Quick time.

(F. E., p. 86.)

Q. 1.—How will the company be placed, and what will it be considered, when it is to march past?

A.—The drill instructor will place 4 points marking the angles of an oblong about 80 paces long by 30 deep. The company (considered as in open column right in front : *see Section LXIV.*) will be placed with its left resting on the centre of one of the long sides of the oblong.

Q. 2.—What other point will be placed by the instructor; and, if the points are men, how will they face?

A.—A fifth point, termed ‘the saluting point’, will be placed 4 paces outside of the centre of that long side of the oblong which is furthest from the company and is called ‘the saluting base’: this point will face towards the flank of the company. The men marking the angles will face in the same direction as the company.

Q. 3.—What does the saluting point represent?

A.—The place occupied by the reviewing officer when a battalion is marching past: *see Section LXIV.*

Q. 4.—By what command will the company be put in motion?

A.—The instructor, having directed the men (unless they are armed with the short rifle) to “SLOPE ARMS”, will give “MARCH PAST IN SLOW TIME. SLOW MARCH.”

Q. 5.—How will the men march off if armed with the short rifle?

A.—At the ‘trail’: *see p. 14, Q. 20.*

C. Q. 6.—What word will be given by the captain, as he reaches the 1st point?

A.—“Left wheel”; and, when the company has wheeled square, “Forward”.

Q. 7.—Will he act in like manner when the company is to make its 2nd wheel?

A.—No ; he will give his word "*Left wheel*" at wheeling distance *from*, so as to wheel *up to*, the 2nd point ; change his flank by moving straight to his front at a short pace during the wheel, placing himself on the right of the company as he gives the word "*Forward, by the right*" ; and will lead steadily on the 3rd point.

Q. 8.—What will be done by the men on the word "*Forward*"?

A.—Whether armed with the long or short rifle, they will at once come to the 'shoulder'.

Q. 9.—What will be the duty of the captain, when he arrives within 30 paces of the saluting point ? C.

A.—To give his company the word "*Rear rank take open order*" ; at the same time recovering his sword and moving out to the front of the company, to the place he occupies when at open order in line (*see p. 9, Q. 6*).

Q. 10.—How do the supernumeraries, coverer, and rear-rank men of each company proceed, on the word L. E. 'open order'?

A.—The lieutenant and ensign recover their swords, and move out to their places at open order (p. 9, Q. 6) ; the supernumerary rank marks time 3 paces ; the coverer moves up into the place vacated by the captain ; the rear rank marks time one pace, then moves steadily forward.

Q. 11.—In what time do the officers move out to the front?

A.—In double time ; bringing their swords to the 'port', and taking up the slow time, as they get to their places.

Q. 12.—When will the officers commence the *Salute*?

A.—When they arrive within 10 paces of the saluting point ; the lieutenant and ensign taking the time from the captain who will, 2 paces previously, have given a preparatory signal by a slight turn of the left hand.

Q. 13.—What time is occupied in performing the Salute?

A.—That occupied in taking 6 paces in slow time; the officers commencing it as the left foot is placed on the ground.

Q. 14.—Describe the Salute?

A.—At the 1st pace, the sword is raised by extending the right arm to the right; at the 2nd, it is brought by a circular motion to the 'recover'; at the 3rd, the motion is continued to the right shoulder; at the 4th, the sword is lowered to the right front. At the 5th pace, the left arm is raised; at the 6th, the left hand—knuckles uppermost and fingers extended—is carried to the peak of the shako. The head is slightly turned to the right while passing the saluting point.

Q. 15.—When do the officers commence bringing their swords to the 'recover' and 'port'?

A.—As the left foot comes to the ground 6 paces after passing the saluting point; performing those motions while taking 2 paces.

C. Q. 16.—When the company is 20 paces past the saluting point, what command will be given by the captain?

A.—“*Rear rank take close order*”; on which the officers, coverer, and rear and supernumerary ranks resume their original positions.

C.L.E. Q. 17.—How do the officers, &c., resume their places?

A.—The officers recover swords; the captain will then turn to the right, the subalterns to the left, the ensign moving in double time: as they get to their places, they will carry swords. The rear and supernumerary ranks regain their distance by stepping out.

C. Q. 18.—When will the company perform its 3rd wheel?

A.—The captain, as his arm touches the 3rd point, will give the word “*Left wheel*”; and when the company has wheeled square, “*Forward, by the left*”.

c. Q. 19.—When, and how, will the captain and coverer resume their posts on the pivot flank of the company?

A.—During the 3rd wheel; passing, as usual, by the rear.

Q. 20.—How long will the company remain at the ‘shoulder’?

A.—The men will come to the ‘slope’ (*Riflemen to the ‘trail’*) on the word “*Forward, by the left*” on the completion of the 3rd wheel.

Q. 21.—What word will the captain give, as he arrives at the 4th point?

A.—“*Left wheel*”: and when square, “*Forward*”.

Q. 22.—If the company is to march past in *quick* time, will it necessarily be halted?

A.—No; it will generally get the word “*BREAK INTO QUICK TIME:—QUICK*” between the 3rd and 4th wheels.

Q. 23.—What difference will there be in marching past in quick time?

A.—The ranks will not be opened; nor will the officers move out or salute.

Q. 24.—Will flanks be changed as in marching past C.L.E. in slow time?

A.—Yes.

Q. 25.—What particular rule is there regarding the rear and supernumerary ranks, in marching past in quick time?

A.—On the word “*Forward, by the right*” on entering the saluting alignment, they will lock up; the former stepping out three paces, the latter six.

Q. 26.—How, and when, will they regain their distances?

A.—By stepping short on the word “*Forward, by the Left*” after the 3rd wheel.

Section XIV.—A Company as in Line advancing from a flank in Open Column of Subdivisions (or Sections).

(F. E., p. 85.)

Q. 1.—When a halted company is required to diminish its front (say to *sections*) by advancing in open column from a flank (say the *right*), what caution and command will be given?

A.—The caution “RIGHT SECTION TO THE FRONT. REMAINING SECTIONS: ON THE MOVE, RIGHT WHEEL”, followed by the command “QUICK MARCH”.

C. a. Q. 2.—Who will move on the caution?

A.—The captain and covering-serjeant: the former placing himself one pace in front of the right-hand man of No. 2 section, the latter one pace in rear of the 2nd file from the left of No. 1 section.

Q. 3.—On the word “MARCH”, how will No. 1 section be led to the front by the captain?

A.—At a short pace.

Q. 4.—When the three other sections have wheeled square, what words of command will be given?

A.—“FORWARD” by the drill instructor; and “Left wheel” to the 2nd section by its commander.

Q. 5.—Will the leading section advance at a full pace, on the drill instructor’s word “FORWARD”?

A.—No; it will continue stepping short till the captain gives “Forward,” which he will do at such a time as to prevent loss of distance.

L. E. Q. 6.—How will the movement proceed?

A.—The leader of the 2nd section will give it “Forward” when it has wheeled square into column: the other section leaders, also, giving the same word as in the ordinary case of a column of sections changing direction. See Section XVI., Q. 10.

Q. 7.—When will the leaders of the three rear sections get to their places in column?

A.—During the 1st wheel.

Q. 8.—Can this movement be done by a company *on the march*?

A.—Yes.

Q. 9.—What would the word of command be?

A.—“RIGHT (or LEFT) SECTION TO THE FRONT: REMAINING SECTIONS RIGHT (or LEFT) WHEEL.—FORWARD”.

Section XV.—The Echelon March of Subdivisions or Sections.

(F. E., p. 91.)

Q. 1.—When a company on the march is required to gain ground to a flank in echelon of subdivisions (or sections), what command does it receive?

A.—“By SUBDIVISIONS (or SECTIONS), RIGHT (or LEFT) WHEEL.—FORWARD.”

Q. 2.—At what degree of wheel will the word “FORWARD” be given?

A.—When the subdivisions (or sections) have completed the eighth of a circle.

Q. 3.—By which flank will each subdivision (or section) march, while in echelon?

A.—By that on which the wheel into echelon was made.

Q. 4.—In taking ground, then, to the reverse flank, C. c. will the captain and covering-serjeant change to that flank?

A.—No; whether the company is wheeled into echelon from line or column, the captain and coverer will retain their original places.

Q. 5.—Will the lieutenant, also, retain his place? L.

A.—He will if the company is wheeled into echelon from *line*; but if the company is as in column, and the wheel is made to the reverse flank, he will move up on that flank, and lead the leading subdivision (or section).

Q. 6.—Who, in that case, will lead the other subdivision (or each of the remaining sections)?

A.—Its pivot man.

Q. 7.—When a company is wheeled from *line* into echelon of sections to the left, since all the officers retain their places, by whom will the sections be led?

A.—Each of the four sections will be led by its pivot man.

Q. 8.—Does the same rule apply to an echelon of subdivisions formed from *line*?

A.—Yes: if the wheel is to the left, each subdivision will be led by its pivot man.

L.E. Q. 9.—In an echelon of sections, how does each section leader in rear take his distance?

A.—From the pivot flank of the section next him in the direction towards which the company is inclining.

Q. 10.—Keeping the distance of his own section, or of the section on his pivot flank?

A.—That of the section on his pivot flank.

Q. 11.—To what must the attention of section leaders be also directed?

A.—To keeping their dressing in a line parallel to their original position.

Q. 12.—Suppose a *halted* company is required to wheel into echelon of subdivisions or sections, what words will be given by the drill instructor?

A.—The caution “TAKE GROUND TO THE RIGHT (or LEFT) IN ECHELLON.—ON THE MOVE, BY SUBDIVISIONS (or SECTIONS) RIGHT (or LEFT) WHEEL”, followed by the command “QUICK MARCH”, and when the eighth of a circle has been wheeled, “FORWARD”.

Q. 13.—Will the formation, then, always be on moveable pivots?

A.—Invariably: it is only an echelon of *companies* that is formed on standing pivots.

C.L.E. Q. 14.—How do the captain and supernumeraries act?

A.—Precisely as when the echelon is formed from a company on the march.

Q. 15.—What command will be given, in order to resume the original direction ?

A.—The drill instructor will give “RE-FORM COMPANY”, on which the subdivisions (or sections) will wheel back, on the pivot flanks, into line.

Q. 16.—Will the company, when re-formed, move on without any further command ?

A.—No : it will mark time till the drill instructor gives “FORWARD”.

Q. 17.—Will the subdivisions (or sections) necessarily be wheeled back on the pivot flanks ?

A.—On even ground, where they are not broken, they may be wheeled *up* in line on the reverse flanks.

Q. 18.—By what command ?

A.—“BY SUBDIVISIONS (OR SECTIONS), LEFT (OR RIGHT) WHEEL.—FORWARD”.

Section XVI.—Marching on an Alignment in Open Column of Subdivisions (or Sections).

(F. E., pp. 85, 92.)

Q. 1.—What is meant by an alignment ?

A.—The imaginary straight line lying between any two points, on which a line may be formed, or (as in the present instance) on which the pivot flanks of a column may be dressed.

Q. 2.—When a company—having wheeled back, as described in *Section XI.*, into open column of subdivisions (or sections)—receives the caution to advance, what will become the duty of its leader ?

A.—To fix on some intermediate point between himself and the distant point which will be taken in prolongation of the pivot flank of the column. See p. 13, Q. 14, 16.

Q. 3.—Who will be the leader of the column ?

C.

A.—The commander of its leading subdivision (or section); *i.e.* the captain.

C.L.E. Q. 4.—When marching in column, what will be the duty of the subdivision (or section) leaders?

A.—The leader of the front subdivision (or section) must march steadily on his marching points: the leader of the rear subdivision (or of each of the rear sections) must give his whole attention to preserving his covering and distance.

Q. 5.—In keeping the distance, what should be borne in mind?

A.—That it should be taken not from the rear rank of the preceding subdivision (or section), but from the front rank.

Q. 6.—What term is usually applied to the distance between subdivisions (or sections) when in open column?

A.—*Wheeling distance.*

Q. 7.—How does an open column of subdivisions (or sections) *change direction* to the right or left?

A.—By each subdivision (or section) wheeling, in succession, round the same point.

C. Q. 8.—What caution will be given; and whom will it affect?

A.—“**CHANGE DIRECTION TO THE RIGHT (or LEFT)**”, by the drill instructor: on which the captain will give his subdivision (or section) the command “*Right wheel*” or “*Left wheel*”, according to the direction named.

Q. 9.—When will he give the word “*Forward*”?

A.—That word will be given by the drill instructor, as the front of the leading subdivision (or section) becomes perpendicular to the direction in which he intends the column to march.

Q. 10.—When, and by whose command, will the succeeding subdivision (or each of the succeeding sections) commence wheeling into, and move off in, the new direction?

A.—It will get the word "*Right* (or *Left*) *wheel*" when it arrives at the point at which the leading one wheeled, and the word "*Forward*" when its front is perpendicular to the new direction, from its own leader.

Q. 11.—In this movement will the subdivision (or C.L.E. section) leaders change their flanks?

A.—No: for the pivot flank of the column will remain unchanged.

Q. 12.—How many paces will a subdivision or section wheel, in completing the *quarter* circle, the *eighth* of a circle, and the *sixteenth* of a circle, respectively?

A.—The *same* number of paces, *half* the number of paces, or a *quarter* of the number of paces, that it contains files; as already explained in the case of a company (p. 36. Q. 25).

*Section XVII.—A Company in Open Column
of Subdivisions (or Sections) forming to
the Reverse Flank.*

(F. E., p. 93.)

Q. 1.—What caution will be given by the drill instructor, when a company moving in open column of subdivisions (or sections) is to form line to its reverse flank; and to whom will it apply?

A.—The caution "*RIGHT (or LEFT) FORM COMPANY*", according as right or left is in front; which will apply to each subdivision (or section) leader.

Q. 2.—Suppose the column is *right* in front, how will they act?

A.—They will change to the right flank of their respective subdivisions or sections: the captain, as he is changing his flank, giving "*Leading subdivision (or section), Right wheel. Double*"; the other subdivision leader (or the leader of each of the other sections) giving "*By the right*" as he takes post on that flank.

Q. 3.—When will the captain halt his subdivision (or section); and why?

A.—When it has wheeled the quarter-circle, he will give it the word "*Forward*"; and when it has taken 3 paces to its new front, in order that the succeeding subdivision (or sections) may clear the supernumerary rank, "*Halt, dress*".

c. Q. 4.—What will then be done?

A.—The coverer will run out to mark the left of the company; facing towards the pivot flank, with his rifle at the 'recover' and his inner arm extended for the company to dress upon. The senior supernumerary serjeant will give a base point, in like manner, on the right of the company.*

L. E. Q. 5.—By whose command will the succeeding subdivision, or each of the succeeding sections, form up into line?

A.—By command of its leader; who, on reaching the outward flank of the subdivision (or section) which preceded him in column, will fall to the rear and give the word "*Right wheel. Double*"; giving "*Forward*" when his men have completed the quarter-circle wheel, and "*Halt, dress up*" the instant his front rank becomes aligned with the rear rank of the line.

Q. 6.—Will the rear subdivision (or each of the rear sections) be *dressed* by its leader?

A.—No: after giving his word "*Halt, dress up*", he will fall into his place in the supernumerary rank; leaving the dressing to be done by the captain.

C. c. Q. 7.—When will the captain, coverer, and senior supernumerary serjeant, take post in line?

A.—The captain, when he has dressed the whole company and given "*Eyes front*"; the coverer and supernumerary serjeant, on the word "*STEADY*" from the drill instructor.

Q. 8.—By whom would the word "*STEADY*" be given, in battalion?

A.—By the senior major. *See Section L.*

* See foot-note, p. 38.

Q. 9.—How is line formed to the *left*, by a column of subdivisions (or sections) marching *left* in front?

A.—In the same manner as it is formed to the right when right is in front: subdivision (or section) leaders changing, on the caution, to the *left* flanks, and giving “*Left wheel. Double. &c.*”

Q. 10.—The captain, then, will dress the company from the left?

A.—Yes; changing his flank, and falling in on the right, after giving “*Eyes front*”.

Q. 11.—On which flank of the company will the coverer and supernumerary serjeant respectively give a base point; and how will they each face?

A.—The coverer will give his point on the right, the supernumerary serjeant on the left of the company; both facing towards the pivot flank (*i.e.* the left).

Q. 12.—Is there not a case in which the column, before receiving the word “*RIGHT (or LEFT) FORM COMPANY*”, will get a preliminary command?

A.—Yes; the effect of the word “*RIGHT (or LEFT) FORM COMPANY*”, being to form line at a right angle to the direction in which the column is marching, it is obvious that when it is required to form at any other angle, the column must first be ordered to *change direction*. (*See Section XVI.*)

Q. 13.—When, in that case, will the word “*RIGHT (or LEFT) FORM COMPANY*” be given?

A.—When the leading subdivision (or section) has changed direction till it is at right angles to the future alignment.

Q. 14.—When will the remaining subdivision (or **L.E.** each of the other sections) be ordered to change direction?

A.—When it reaches the spot where the first changed direction.

[The manner in which a company in column of subdivisions (or sections) forms to the *pivot flank* is described in *Section XII.*]

Section XVIII.—File Marching.

(F. E., pp. 30, 49, 97.)

Q. 1.—By what command will a company in line be brought into file?

A.—“To THE RIGHT (*or LEFT*) FACE”; or, on the march, “To THE RIGHT (*or LEFT*) TURN”.

C. c. **Q. 2.**—When a company is marching in files, where are the captain and covering-serjeant placed?

A.—The former, next to the front-rank man of the leading file; the latter, at the head of the front rank.

L. E. **Q. 3.**—The supernumeraries?
A.—The lieutenant marches on the reverse flank of the 2nd file from the present rear of the company; the ensign retains his position in rear of the centre.

Q. 4.—When a company faces from the halt, then, or turns while on the march, to the reverse flank, the captain and covering-serjeant change to that flank?

A.—Yes; the former passing by the *front* (*see p. 5, Q. 31*). The lieutenant will, as usual, make a corresponding change.

Q. 5.—Is file marching an essential part of drill?

A.—Yes; although in all field movements the flank march by fours has been substituted for file marching, the latter forms an important part of squad and company drill, and in its practice the strictest observance of all the rules of marching is particularly necessary.

Q. 6.—What faults should the soldier be cautioned to avoid, in file marching?

A.—Stepping short, looking down, leaning back, bending the knees too much, and losing distance.

Q. 7.—In order that distance may not be lost, how must each (except the leading) man of each rank step?

A.—He must place his foot on the ground in advance of the spot from which the preceding man has taken up his foot.

Q. 8.—Ought the men to attend to their covering, while marching in file?

A.—Yes; as closely as to their dressing in line.

Q. 9.—How should they be taught to cover?

A.—So accurately, that each man may only see the head of the man immediately in his front.

Q. 10.—Is the double march used in file marching?

A.—Never.

Q. 11.—What rule is to be observed in giving the word to soldiers to turn from line into file, and again from file into line?

A.—They will always be ordered to "TURN" to the right as the left foot, and to the left as the right foot, is coming to the ground. (*See p. 19, Q. 60.*)

Q. 12.—Suppose the word "TURN" is *not* given as the proper foot is coming to the ground?

A.—They will move on one pace more, and then turn.

Q. 13.—If the men are standing with their rifles at the 'order', when faced from line into file, to what position will they bring them as they step off?

A.—To the 'advance'; *Riflemen*, to the 'shoulder'.

Q. 14.—If standing at the 'shoulder'?

A.—Men armed with the long rifle will step off at the 'slope'; *Riflemen* will remain at the 'shoulder'.

Q. 15.—If, when marching in line at the 'trail', they are ordered to turn into file?

A.—They will come to the 'advance' (or 'shoulder') as they turn.

Q. 16.—When will they be ordered to resume the trail?

A.—They will return to the 'trail', without word of command, when they turn into line.

Q. 17.—How do men wheel, while marching in file?

A.—The leading man will move round the quarter of the circumference of a circle about the size of a cart-wheel; the other men following on his footsteps in succession.

Q. 18.—To what points should their attention be directed during the wheel?

A.—To preserving the cadence of march, and to the

outer rank stepping rather longer (particularly with the outer foot) during the wheel.

Q. 19.—Suppose the company is directed to “HALT” or “MARK TIME” when only part of the files have wheeled in the named direction?

A.—The remainder will be taught, on the word “REAR FILES, COVER”, to cover off in rear by the side step.

Q. 20.—In what case will the rear files *not* be required to cover off; and why?

A.—If the word “FRONT” is to follow “HALT”; because the word “DRESS” will follow, and the men will then as a matter of course get into their places.

Q. 21.—When men moving in file at the ‘advance’ (or ‘shoulder’) halt and front into line, to what position will they bring their rifles?

A.—To the ‘order’.

Section XIX.—Formation of Fours.

(F. E., pp. 50, 97.)

Q. 1.—What is the rule with respect to right and left files, in forming four-deep from the halt?

A.—After the rear rank has stepped back, the right files will not move off their ground, but the left files will form upon them.

Q. 2.—Suppose the file on the left of the company is an odd number?

A.—That file will then be considered a *left* file; and the file on its right, although an even number, will be considered a *right* file.

Q. 3.—Why?

A.—In order that there may always be a complete rank of fours on the left of the company.

Q. 4.—How will the rear-rank man of the odd file be aligned, when the fours are formed?

A.—With the *left* files of the rear rank.

Q. 5.—If four-deep is to be formed to the front, what command is given?

A.—“FORM FOURLS : DEEP”.

Q. 6.—Who will move at that command?

A.—On the word “FOURLS”, the rear rank will take a pace of 12 inches to the rear. On the word “DEEP”, the left files of both ranks will take a pace of 21 inches to the rear with the left foot, and a side-step of 21 inches to the right with the right foot: thus placing themselves in rear of the right files.

Q. 7.—How is four-deep formed to the *right*?

A.—By the command “FORM FOURLS : RIGHT.” On the word “FOURLS”, the rear rank steps back as before, and on the word “RIGHT” the whole face to the right. The left files then take a side-step to their right with the right foot, and a pace to the new front with the left foot: thus placing themselves on the right of the right files.

Q. 8.—Are fours formed to the *left* on precisely the same principle?

A.—No; there is a difference in the two formations. In forming to the left; after the rear rank has stepped back as usual, and the whole have faced to the left, the left files step *back* to the left of the right files, by taking a side-step to the left and then a pace backwards with the right foot.

Q. 9.—How is four-deep formed to the *rear*?

A.—By the command “FORM FOURLS : ABOUT.” On the word “FOURLS”, the rear rank steps back as usual; and on the word “ABOUT”, the whole face to the right-about. The left files then take a pace to their present front with the right foot, and a pace to their present left with the left foot; thus placing themselves in the proper rear of the right files.

Q. 10.—Will 21 inches be the length of each pace taken by the left files to front (or rear) and to the side?

A.—Yes.

Q. 11.—Why is not the side-step taken by one man

to clear or cover another, of the same length (10 inches) as the ordinary side-step ?

A.—Because if it were so, two side-steps would be necessary, instead of one.

Q. 12.—In what time are all those paces taken by the left files ?

A.—Invariably in *slow* time.

Q. 13.—By what command does a halted company re-form two-deep from four-deep ?

A.—By the command “FRONT” : on which word the men, if fours have been formed to a flank or to the rear, make a correct face to their front ; the left files move up into their proper intervals in line ; and the rear rank then closes to its proper distance from the front rank.

Q. 14.—How soon after fronting, do the right files of the rear rank close on those of the front rank : and why ?

A.—Not till the time necessary for taking 2 paces has elapsed : in order that the left files may get into their places, and the whole of the rear rank close together.

Q. 15.—Suppose the men are standing at the ‘order’, when directed to form fours ?

A.—They will move at the ‘short trail’.

Q. 16.—How does a company advancing, or retiring, form four-deep to *its present front* ?

A.—On the word “FOUPS”, the present rear rank will step short one pace to gain its distance, and on the word “DEEP” the right files will mark time 2 paces while the left files get into their places as when halted : on the 3rd pace, the whole will move steadily on.

Q. 17.—When “FORM TWO-DEEP” is given ?

A.—The right files will mark time 2 paces, while the left files get into their places and the rear rank closes on the front.

Q. 18.—How is four-deep formed to a *flank*, when a company is advancing or retiring ?

A.—On the word “FOURES”, the present rear rank will step short one pace. On the word “RIGHT (or LEFT)”, the men turn to the named flank, and the right files mark time 2 paces while the left move to their places as when the movement is done from the halt: on the 3rd pace, the whole move on steadily in the new direction.

Q. 19.—When “FRONT (or REAR) TURN” is given?

A.—The whole will turn to the front or rear as the case may be, and the right files will then mark time 2 paces for the left to get into their places and the (present) rear rank to gain its distance.

Q. 20.—Can a company, while moving in fours to a flank, form two-deep?

A.—Yes: on the word “FORM TWO-DEEP” the left files have only to fall back, or step up, into their places in file, and the rear rank then to close on the front rank; the right files marking time 2 paces.

Q. 21.—Suppose the men are marching with their rifles at the ‘trail’?

A.—They will come to the ‘advance’ (*Riflemen* to the ‘shoulder’) as they form two-deep.

Q. 22.—When “FORM FOUR: DEEP” is given to a company marching in files?

A.—On the word “FOUR”, the rear rank will incline from the front rank by a lengthened diagonal step; and on the word “DEEP”, the left files will move to their places in fours; the right files marking time 2 paces. If previously marching at the ‘trail’, the men will resume that position without word of command as they form four-deep.

Q. 23.—Should men ever be ordered to form “FOURES ABOUT” on the march?

A.—No.

Q. 24.—Can they be required to form “FOURES DEEP” from the halt, while facing to the rear?

A.—No; for they never *should* stand facing to the rear.

Q. 25.—Suppose men are ordered to form fours while marking time?

A.—On the word “FOURLS”, the (present) rear rank will step back a short pace.

Q. 26.—How does a company that has formed fours to the front or rear, close on a flank or the centre?

A.—If the company is at the halt, the four men on the named flank (or in the centre) stand fast: the remainder close by the side-step. If on the march, the files on which the closing is to be made continue moving straight to their front, at a short pace, the remainder closing on them by the diagonal march: and on the word “FORWARD”, the company moves steadily on.

Q. 27.—On the word “FROM THE RIGHT (LEFT, or CENTRE), RE-FORM TWO-DEEP”?

A.—The four men on whom the closing was made will stand fast, or, if the company is advancing, will shorten their paces: the remainder will open out by the side step, or, if on the march, will incline outwards. The left files move up into their places, in succession, as the intervals are opened; the rear-rank men at the same time regaining their proper distances: on the word “FORWARD” (if the company is on the march), the whole move steadily forward.

Q. 28.—When will the word “FORWARD” in each case (Q. 26, 27) be given?

A.—In the former case, when all the men have closed; in the latter, when the two-deep formation is completed.

Q. 29.—How do the officers act, when a company is closed and opened out as above described?

A.—They simply close, and open out, with the company.

C. c. Q. 30.—When a company is taking ground to a flank in fours, where do the captain and covering-serjeant march?

A.—The former next to the front-rank man of the leading four; the latter at the head of the front rank.

L. E. Q. 31.—Where do the supernumerary officers march?

A.—The lieutenant on the reverse flank of the 2nd four from the (present) rear of the company; the ensign retains his position in rear of the centre.

Q. 32.—What are the rules with respect to company leaders, when, in *battalion*, a column takes ground to a flank by fours ? C. L.

A.—The captains lead the companies if ground is taken to the pivot flank; the lieutenants, if to the reverse flank: unless officers are ordered to change their flanks. Company leaders march on that flank of their leading four which is nearest to the ‘company of direction’: unless the column is at *close* distance, in which case the leader of each company (except that which is at the head of the column) will march at the head of its front rank. (*See Section XL.*)

Section XX.—A Company marching in Files or Fours forming to the Front, to either Flank, or to the Right- (or Left-) about.

(F. E., pp. 42, 49, 94.)

Q. 1.—When the men are marching in file, what command is given in order to form company, subdivisions, or sections, to the front: and how will the captain and covering-serjeant move ? C. c.

A.—“FRONT FORM COMPANY (SUBDIVISIONS, or SECTIONS)”: on which the captain will move across at right angles to the original direction of the march, so as to meet the pivot flank of the company (or of the leading subdivision, or section) at the completion of the formation; the coverer, passing at the same time by the rear, will take post in rear of the 2nd file from the pivot flank.

Q. 2.—How is the formation effected ?

A.—The leading file of the company, or of each subdivision or section, will mark time. The remainder, if right is leading, will turn to the left and wheel to the right; if left is leading, will turn to the right and wheel to the left.

Q. 3.—Does the rear-rank man of the leading file mark time ?

A.—No : he turns with the rest of the company, moving round into his place during the wheel.

Q. 4.—When the company or column is formed, will it move forward?

A.—No : it will mark time until the command "FORWARD", or "HALT, DRESS", is given by the drill instructor.

L. E. Q. 5.—How do the supernumeraries act when *company* is formed?

A.—The lieutenant moves to his place during the formation ; the supernumerary rank form with the company, correcting their distances, if necessary, when cleared by the rest of the company.

Q. 6.—If *subdivisions* or *sections* are formed, when will their respective leaders take post?

A.—When the command "HALT" or "FORWARD" is given.

Q. 7.—To which flank will the men look, and feel, while wheeling?

A.—They will, as in all wheels, look to the outward flank and feel inwards.

Q. 8.—Suppose either of the above formations are directed to be done "IN DOUBLE TIME"?

A.—In that case the leading file (or files), instead of marking time, will move on steadily in quick time ; the remainder will make a half turn outwards, and double up into their places, taking up the quick time as they arrive in line with the leading file of the company (or of each subdivision or section, as the case may be).

Q. 9.—How is a company marching in file, suppose *right* leading, formed to the reverse flank?

A.—The drill instructor gives "ON THE LEADING FILE, RIGHT FORM COMPANY": on which the rear-rank man of the leading file turns to his right, takes 2 paces to the new front, and halts ; and the remainder of the rear rank form, in succession, on his left. The front-rank men get into their places by wheeling round their respective rear-rank men, and forming, successively, in front of them.

Q. 10.—To which flank do the men look, as they come into line?

A.—To the flank from which the captain is dressing.

Q. 11.—How do the captain and covering-serjeant act in this formation?

A.—The coverer marks the outward flank of the company, facing towards the pivot flank, with his rifle at the 'recover,' and his inner arm extended; the captain dresses the men (from the pivot flank), file by file, as they come up in line. C. c.

Q. 12.—Will there be any other point given?

A.—Yes: the senior supernumerary serjeant will give a point on the inner flank of the company; facing, and extending his arm, in the same manner as the coverer.

Q. 13.—In what case, in battalion, may this movement be required?

A.—When a column is required to form line to the reverse flank, and there is no room for *wheeling up* the companies. *See Section L.*

Q. 14.—Will the directions given above for a single company be applicable, in that instance, to each company of the battalion?

A.—Yes: with this exception, that the *supernumerary serjeant* of no company, except the leading one, will give a base point.

Q. 15.—When will the captain, coverer, and senior supernumerary serjeant take post? C. c.

A.—The captain, when he has dressed the company and given "*Eyes front*"; the coverer and supernumerary serjeant, on the instructor's word "*STEADY*."

Q. 16.—How does a company marching in files form to the *pivot* flank?

A.—By simply halting and fronting.

Q. 17.—How does a company marching in files, right leading, form to the *right-about*?

A.—On the command "*ON THE LEADING FILE, RIGHT-ABOUT FORM COMPANY*", the rear-rank man of

the leading file wheels to the right-about, then takes 2 paces to his new front, and halts. The remainder march on in file, wheeling to the right on the spot where the leading file wheeled, and forming to the right by successive files as before described. (See Q. 9.)

C. c. Q. 18.—Do the captain, covering-serjeant, and senior supernumerary serjeant, act as in the formation of company to the *right*?

A.—Yes, in every respect.

Q. 19.—How is a company marching in file, *left* leading, formed to the *left* or *left-about*?

A.—On the same principle that it forms to the right or right-about, when its right flank is leading.

L. E. Q. 20.—How will the supernumerary rank proceed when company is formed to the reverse flank, or to the right- (or left-) about?

A.—Precisely as when company is formed to the front.

Q. 21.—Are either of the above formations applicable to a company moving in *fours* to a flank?

A.—They are all applicable.

Q. 22.—How will the formations proceed?

A.—In forming to the front, the leading file will, on the command, mark time; and the remainder, *after* turning outwards, form two-deep: in forming to the reverse flank, or to the right-about or left-about, the whole will form two-deep immediately on the command. The formation will then proceed as explained for a company marching in file.

C. c. Q. 23.—How will the captain, covering-serjeant, and supernumeraries act?

L. E. A.—Precisely as in the same formations from file-marching.

Q. 24.—When, in battalion, do companies marching in fours form to the right-about or left-about?

A.—When a battalion in line has been ordered to pass from the proper right or left of companies by fours to the rear, and is required to re-form line to the proper front. (See Section XXXIV.)

Section XXI.—Countermarching by Files and Ranks.

(F. E., p. 99.)

Q. 1.—When a company is to countermarch, what should it be considered?

A.—As in column.

Q. 2.—What rule is always observed in countermarching by *files* and *ranks*?

A.—That in the former, the men countermarch round the front rank: in the latter, they countermarch to the *right*.

Q. 3.—When a company ‘as in column’ is to countermarch by *files* or *ranks*, what caution will it receive; and who will move?

A.—“COUNTERMARCH BY FILES (*or* RANKS)”; on which the covering-serjeant will step up and cover the captain.

Q. 4.—What command will follow, if the company is to countermarch by *Ranks*?

A.—“RIGHT AND LEFT FACE”; on which the front rank will face to the right, the rear rank to the left.

Q. 5.—Will not that depend on whether the column is right or left in front?

A.—No: whether right or left is in front, the front rank will face to the right, the rear rank to the left.

Q. 6.—How do the captain and covering-serjeant act, on the word “FACE”? C. c.

A.—The coverer faces to the right-about, and remains steady; the captain, having taken one pace outwards and faced inwards, will take one long side-pace in the direction in which the coverer is facing.

Q. 7.—The lieutenant, and supernumerary rank? L. E.

A.—The lieutenant will move up and place himself one pace from the reverse flank of the front rank, facing inwards: the supernumerary rank will, at the same time, face towards the reverse flank of the company.

Q. 8.—What command will follow?

A.—“QUICK MARCH”.

Q. 9.—Will the supernumerary rank step off on the word “MARCH”?

A.—Yes; with the exception of the lieutenant: and countermarch round the flank to which they faced.

Q. 10.—Each halting and fronting as he gets to his place in the new rear?

A.—No: marking time till the company is halted and fronted, and *then* halting and fronting. The lieutenant will take post at the same time.

Q. 11.—Will the supernumerary rank observe that rule, whether the column countermarches by *files* or *ranks*?

A.—Yes: in both cases.

Q. 12.—If the company is to countermarch by *Files*, how will the men be ordered to face?

A.—The drill instructor will order them to face *from*, so as to countermarch *up to*, the pivot flank.

Q. 13.—Suppose, then, the company is as in column right in front: what command will follow the caution to countermarch by *Files*?

A.—“TO THE RIGHT FACE”.

Q. 14.—Is the pivot flank of a column necessarily changed by the companies countermarching?

A.—Yes: the column, if right in front before, will be left in front after, the countermarch; and *vice versa*.

C.L.c. Q. 15.—How do the captain, lieutenant, and coverer, act in the countermarch by *Files*?

A.—Precisely as in the countermarch by ranks.

Q. 16.—In each case:—When will the captain give his word “*Halt, front, dress*”, and the coverer fall into his place in rear of the 2nd file from the new pivot flank?

A.—The captain will give that word when the leading file (if the countermarch is by files), or the front-rank pivot man (if the countermarch is by ranks), reaches the coverer, who will then fall back to his place.

Q. 17. What precaution must be taken in both these countermarches?

A.—That the files move up to the lieutenant as they wheel at the reverse flank: and that, while wheeling, they lengthen their pace with the outward foot, so as not to check the rest of the company.

Q. 18.—What would result from the neglect of that rule in the countermarch by files?

A.—The files would become so much extended, that by the time the leading one reached the covering-serjeant, when the command "*Halt, front, dress*" would necessarily be given, little more than two-thirds of the men would have countermarched.

Q. 19.—May a company ever perform these countermarches in *double time*?

A.—No.

Q. 20.—Is countermarching applicable to a company in fours?

A.—Yes; *if the company, after countermarching, is to continue its march.*

Q. 21.—May a company as in *line* be countermarched: and, if so, will it countermarch by files or by ranks?

A.—It may countermarch either by files or ranks; but should generally be ordered to countermarch by files.

Q. 22.—Why?

A.—Because when a company of a battalion in line countermarches on its own ground, it does so by files.

Q. 23.—On what occasion will a company of a battalion in line be required so to countermarch?

A.—When column is formed from line on any named company, facing to the rear, that company will countermarch by files, on the caution. (See Sec. XLVII.)

Q. 24.—What is the rule, in battalion, with respect to companies in column countermarching?

A.—They will always countermarch by files; unless the column is at *close* distance, when they will necessarily countermarch by ranks.

Section XXII.—Diminishing and Increasing the Front of an Open Column Halted.

(F. E., pp. 100, 102.)

Q. 1.—What will the company be considered in this movement?

A.—Invariably as in open column: this mode of diminishing front being inapplicable to a column formed at any other distance, or to a battalion formed in line.

Q. 2.—Whether front is to be diminished, or increased, which subdivision (or sections) of the company will move?

A.—The *pivot* subdivision, or sections, will, in the former instance, move in rear of the *reverse*; in the latter, will move up to the front.

Q. 3.—What caution will be given, and by whom, when a halted company is to diminish its front by forming subdivisions?

A.—“FORM SUBDIVISIONS”, by the drill instructor.

L. Q. 4.—To whom will the caution apply?

A.—To the lieutenant, who will fall back to mark the pivot flank of the subdivision that will be the rear one of the column.

Q. 5.—What command will follow, and by whom will it be given?

A.—Supposing right to be in front, the drill instructor will give “LEFT SUBDIVISION, RIGHT-ABOUT THREE-QUARTERS FACE”: if left is in front, he will give “RIGHT SUBDIVISION, LEFT-ABOUT THREE-QUARTERS FACE”. (See Q. 13.)

C. c. Q. 6.—Suppose the company is as in column *right* in front:—the left subdivision will, of course, face as ordered; what other individuals of the company will move?

A.—The captain will face to the right; the coverer will take a side-step of 21 inches to the left, and face to the right; and the rear-rank man of the left-hand file of the right subdivision will fall back, and cover the *third* file from the left of his subdivision.

Q. 7.—Why does not the rear-rank man, when he uncovers, place himself, as usual, in rear of the file next him?

A.—Because there would not then be room for the flank of the left subdivision to pass.

Q. 8.—When does he return to his place?

A.—As soon as the left subdivision has passed him.

Q. 9.—When do the captain and coverer move to C. c. their posts in column?

A.—While the left subdivision, which steps off on the word “*QUICK MARCH*”, is moving to the rear.

Q. 10.—From whom, and when, will the left subdivision get the word “*Halt, front, dress*”? L.

A.—From the lieutenant, when the proper left flank of that subdivision reaches him.

Q. 11.—Will the ensign march off in the proper E. rear of, and front with, the left subdivision?

A.—Yes.

Q. 12.—Suppose the drill instructor directs the C. captain to give the word “*Left (or Right) subdivision, Right- (or Left-) about three-quarters face*”?

A.—In that case the captain, before giving the word, will face inwards.

Q. 13.—How are sections formed from a halted L. E. column of subdivisions?

A.—On the same principle that subdivisions are formed from a halted company. The lieutenant will move in the same manner as the captain, the ensign as the lieutenant, in that formation; the senior supernumerary serjeant also placing himself, on the caution “*FORM SECTIONS*”, at the point where the pivot flank of his section will rest in column.

Q. 14.—Who will give the word "*Halt, front, dress*" to the pivot section of each subdivision?

A.—Its own leader.

L. c. Q. 15.—When an open column of subdivisions, right or left in front, receives the caution "FORM COMPANY", how will the covering-serjeant and the lieutenant move?

A.—The coverer will move to that point where the pivot flank of the rear subdivision will rest when company is formed : the lieutenant will fall back into the supernumerary rank.

C. Q. 16.—On the word "FACE"?

A.—The captain will face inwards, and the rear-rank man of the pivot file of the leading subdivision uncover : as when subdivisions are formed from company.

Q. 17.—On the word "MARCH"?

A.—The rear subdivision will step off ; the captain moving across to the coverer. As its front rank comes up in line with the rear rank of the other subdivision, the captain will give "*Halt, front, dress*", and fall in.

c. Q. 18.—When will the covering-serjeant, and the rear-rank man who uncovered, take their proper places?

A.—On the captain's word "*Halt, front, dress*".

L. c. Q. 19.—How are subdivisions formed from sections?

A.—In the same manner that company is formed from subdivisions ; the covering-serjeant and lieutenant proceeding, on the caution, to mark where the pivot flank of the front and rear subdivisions respectively will rest.

E. Q. 20.—When do the leaders of the 2nd and 4th sections from the front, take their places in the supernumerary rank?

A.—On the caution "FORM SUBDIVISIONS".

C. Q. 21.—On the word "LEFT (or RIGHT) SECTIONS, LEFT (or RIGHT) HALF FACE" who, besides the men of the named sections, will move?

A.—The captain will face inwards; and the rear-rank man of the file on the inner flank of the other two sections will uncover. (See Q. 6, 7.)

Q. 22.—Will the captain give the word "*Halt, front, dress*" to *both* the pivot sections when they have moved up to the rear ranks of the other sections? C. L.

A.—No; that word will be given by the captain to the front, and by the lieutenant to the rear, pivot section.

Q. 23.—When will the men who uncovered take their proper places?

A.—When their respective subdivisions get the word "*Dress*".

Q. 24.—May company be formed at once from sections? L. E. c.

A.—Yes; the drill instructor giving the caution "FORM COMPANY", on which the leader of each of the three rear sections will fall into the supernumerary rank, and the coverer mark the pivot flank of the company: followed by the commands "REAR SECTIONS, LEFT (or RIGHT) HALF FACE. QUICK MARCH".

Q. 25.—How will the captain proceed in this formation? C.

A.—As directed in the A. to Q. 16, 17: halting the three rear sections in succession as they come up in line.

Q. 26.—When will the rear-rank man of the outer file of the 2nd and 3rd sections from the front uncover, to let the following section pass?

A.—As his own section is halted.

Q. 27.—Why does the drill instructor give the executive words, when a company as in column (or a column of subdivisions or sections) is required to increase or diminish its front from the halt?

A.—Because when a battalion in open column diminishes or increases its front from the halt, a general word is given to the whole by the battalion commander.

*Section XXIII.—Diminishing and Increasing
the Front of an Open Column on the
March.*

(F. E., pp. 102, 104.)

Q. 1.—In diminishing front *on the march*, does the rule that the *pivot* subdivision, or sections, shall move in rear, hold good?

A.—Yes.

C. Q. 2.—When a company marching to the front receives from the drill instructor the caution “*FORM SUBDIVISIONS*”, what will be the captain’s duty?

A.—To give the pivot subdivision the command “*Mark time*”; and the instant its reverse flank is clear of the subdivision which will be the leading one of the column, “*Right (or Left) half turn*”.

Q. 3.—Does that pivot subdivision continue to mark time until it gets the word “*Forward*”?

A.—No : the only commands it will receive are “*Left (or Right) Subdivision, Mark time*”—*Right (or Left) half turn*”, until it reaches its place in column, when it will get “*Front turn*”.

Q. 4.—Is it not a rule that when men are ordered to “*MARK TIME*”, they are not to advance till “*FORWARD*” is given?

A.—Yes : that is the rule, to which, however, this case forms an exception ; for the instant the pivot subdivision receives the command “*Right (or Left) half turn*”, it steps off.

L. Q. 5.—Who gives the command “*Front turn*” to the rear subdivision?

A.—The lieutenant ; who will move across, during the movement, to meet its pivot flank.

Q. 6.—When does he give it that word?

A.—When its pivot flank reaches him.

Q. 7.—Should the men of the pivot subdivision, in moving in rear of the reverse one, lengthen the pace or quicken the time?

A.—No.

Q. 8.—When do the captain and coverer move to C. c. their places in column?

A.—While the pivot subdivision is moving in rear of the other.

Q. 9.—How is company re-formed?

A.—The drill instructor gives the caution “FORM COMPANY”; and the captain turns inwards and gives “Left (or Right) Subdivision, Left (or Right) half turn”; instantly adding the command “Double”, and inclining outwards to the pivot flank of the company.

Q. 10.—When, and from whom, will the rear subdivision get the word “Front turn”?

A.—From the captain, when its reverse flank has cleared the pivot flank of the leading subdivision.

Q. 11.—What other word will the pivot subdivision receive from the captain?

A.—The word “Quick”, when it arrives in line with the other subdivision.

Q. 12.—When will the captain take his place on the flank of the company, and the lieutenant fall into the supernumerary rank?

A.—The former, immediately after giving his word “Quick”; the latter, on the caution “FORM COMPANY”.

Q. 13.—Do the instructions for diminishing and increasing front by subdivisions, apply equally to sections?

A.—Yes.

Q. 14.—By whose command will the pivot sections, C.L.E. in diminishing the front of a column of subdivisions, “Mark time” and “Right (or Left) half turn”?

A.—Those words will be given by the captain, and will apply to *both* the pivot sections ; their own immediate leaders giving "*Front turn*".

Q. 15.—Can *company* be formed at once from sections, on the march ?

A.—Yes : the captain giving the word to all the rear sections, which will move together as in forming subdivisions, and, in succession, receive the command "*Front turn, Quick*".

Q. 16.—When will the leader of each of the three rear sections fall into the supernumerary rank ?

A.—On the caution "*Form. COMPANY*".

Q. 17.—Why are the executive words, when front is diminished or increased on the march, given by the captain ?

A.—Because they would be given by each captain in the same movements in battalion.

Section XXIV. — A Company in Open Column of Subdivisions Diminishing Front by breaking off Files, or by breaking into Fours or Files.

(F. E., pp. 105, 106.)

Q. 1.—From which flank should the files, at drill, be ordered to break off ?

A.—Invariably from the *pivot flank*.

Q. 2.—When files are to be broken off, what word is given ; and by whom ?

A.—The drill instructor gives the word "*BREAK OFF THREE (or more) FILES*".

C. Q. 3.—Do the files break off at that word ?

A.—No : it is only a caution, on which the captain will give the leading subdivision "*Three (or more) files on the left (or right), Right (or Left) turn : Left (or Right) wheel*".

Q. 4.—The leader of the rear subdivision breaking off the ordered number of files at the same time ? L.

A.—No : he will not order the files to break off until he arrives at the spot where the front of the leading subdivision was diminished.

Q. 5.—When files are thus broken off, where do the captain and covering-serjeant place themselves ? C. c.

A.—The former moves to the flank of the remainder of his front rank, as the files drop to the rear ; the latter moves up and covers him.

Q. 6.—What will *Riflemen* do, as they turn into file?

A.—They will, as usual, come to the 'shoulder'.

Q. 7.—To increase the front of the column, what command will be given ; and by whom ?

A.—“*Three* (or more) *files to the front*” : by each subdivision leader in succession : a caution being previously given by the drill instructor.

Q. 8.—How do the named files move up to the front ?

A.—They make a half turn to the pivot flank, and move up in double time : resuming the ‘trail’, if *Riflemen*, as they get into line.

Q. 9.—Suppose the drill instructor wishes all the C. L. broken-off files to be brought to the front at once ?

A.—He will give the word “*FILES TO THE FRONT*”, which will be repeated by each subdivision leader in succession.

Q. 10.—Should all the files that are in rear not be ordered to the front, where do those files move to that are to continue in rear ; and when does the coverer fall back ? c.

A.—The files left in rear incline diagonally till they cover the outward files on the pivot flank : the coverer remains covering the captain till *all* the files are brought up.

Q. 11.—What rule must be observed by the files that are broken off ?

A.—They must lock up, so as not to interfere with men who may be in their rear.

Q. 12.—In what other way may a company in column, or a column of subdivisions (or sections), halted or on the march, diminish its front?

A.—By breaking into files or fours.

Q. 13.—From which flank will the advance, in all cases, be made?

A.—From the reverse flank.

Q. 14.—What will be the command; suppose an open column of subdivisions (right in front), on the march, is required to diminish front by breaking into files?

A.—“**To THE RIGHT TURN, LEFT WHEEL**”.

C. Q. 15.—If a company is standing as in *close* or *quarter-distance* column, by whose command will it break, say into fours, from the right?

A.—The drill instructor would, in that case, give the caution “**ADVANCE (or RETIRE) BY FOURS FROM THE RIGHT**”; the leader of the company giving, as he would in battalion, the executive words “*Form fours: right. Left (or Right) wheel. Quick March*”.

Q. 16.—How will the front be increased?

A.—By the word “**FRONT (or REAR) FORM SECTIONS (SUBDIVISIONS, or COMPANY)**”. See Section XX., Q. 1-8.

Section XXV.—Forming Close Column of Sections, and Company Square.

(F. E., p. 106.)

Q. 1.—How will the company stand for this formation?

A.—As a general rule, with ordered arms, bayonets (or swords) unfixed: troops armed with the long rifle

should occasionally perform the movement with arms shouldered and bayonets fixed.

Q. 2.—What caution will the drill instructor give ? C.

A.—“**Form Company Square**”. The captain will then give “*Form close column of sections*”: on which the 1st section will face to the left and disengage to the front, the 3rd and 4th sections will face to the right and disengage to the rear, and the covering-serjeant will place himself at the head of the 1st section: followed by the command “*Quick March*”.

Q. 3.—How will the 1st section, after facing, ‘disengage’ to the front; and the 3rd and 4th sections to the rear?

A.—The 1st section will disengage to the right by its leading file closing two paces in that direction, the rear-rank man inclining rather back; the 3rd and 4th sections will disengage to their right in like manner.

Q. 4.—On the word “*March*”?

A.—The 2nd section will fix bayonets (or swords) and stand fast: the remaining sections will step off.

Q. 5.—What will the 1st, 3rd, and 4th sections do, as they get to their places in column?

A.—They will halt and front at the distance of a pace of 21 inches, and will fix bayonets (or swords), without word of command.

Q. 6.—When, and how, will the captain and other C.L.E. section leaders, the coverer, and supernumeraries, take c. post in column?

A.—When the column is formed, the captain will take post on the left of the front rank of the front section; the other section leaders on the pivot flank, and the remaining supernumeraries on the reverse flank, of their respective sections. The covering-serjeant will cover the captain.

C. Q. 7.—Is the caution to form square then given ?
A.—No caution to form square is given : but on the captain's word "*Prepare for Cavalry*", the men face outwards so as to show a front of equal strength in every direction ; the men in the centre filling up any intervals that may occur ; thus forming a company square.

Q. 8.—Do the men face outwards the moment that command is given ?
A.—No ; they allow time for the officers and non-commissioned officers to move into the centre of the column.

Q. 9.—Will the serjeants fix swords ?
A.—Yes : *see p. 7, Q. 9.*

C. Q. 10.—What word is next given ; and its effect ?
A.—"*Ready*", by the captain. On that word, the two front ranks of each face of the square sink down on the right knee as a front and rear rank, placing the butts of their rifles on the ground against the inside of that knee, locks uppermost, and muzzles slanting upwards so that the point of the bayonet (or sword) will be about the height of a horse's nose ; the left hand will grasp the rifle close above the lower band, the right hand holding the small of the butt ; and the left arm will rest on the thigh, about 6 inches in rear of the left knee. The 3rd and 4th ranks of each face come to the 'ready' position, as a front and rear rank standing ; the muzzles of the rifles inclined upwards.

Q. 11.—Will the standing, or kneeling, ranks cock ?
A.—Not until required to fire.

Q. 12.—What is the difference between making ready 'as a front' and 'as a rear' rank, standing ?
A.—In coming to the 'ready' as a *front* rank standing, a man carries the left foot 10 inches to the left front, and presses the small of the butt of the rifle against his hip : as a *rear* rank standing, he carries his left foot 6 inches to the front, and presses the butt 4 inches above the hip.

Q. 13.—In a square the sides of which are less than four deep, how many ranks kneel ; and why ?

A.—The front rank only ; in order that there may be two ranks to fire.

Q. 14.—Suppose it is required to fire, how will the standing and kneeling ranks respectively fire ; and by whose command ?

A.—The standing ranks will fire by files ; the kneeling ranks (or rank) will fire a volley : by command of the captain, on a caution from the drill instructor.

Q. 15.—What are the firing words ?

A.—For the standing ranks, “*File-firing from the right (left, or both flanks) of the — face (or faces). Commence*” : for the kneeling ranks, “*Kneeling ranks (of the — face) : Fire a Volley. At — yards, Ready.—Present*”.

Q. 16.—When will the kneeling rank (or ranks) be ordered by the captain to fire ?

A.—After “*Cease firing*” has been given, on a caution from the instructor, to the standing ranks.

Q. 17.—To what position will the standing ranks bring their rifles on that word ?

A.—Each file, as it completes its loading, will come to the ‘shoulder’ or the ‘order’, according as the men are armed with the long or short rifle.

Q. 18.—The kneeling ranks having given their volley, what will be done ?

A.—The captain will give the word “*Load*”. On that word, the kneeling ranks will spring to the standing position at the right half face ; bringing the rifle to an horizontal position at the right side and seizing it with the right hand close in front of the left : they will then come to the ‘Prepare to load’ position, as standing ranks, and go on with their loading.

Q. 19.—What will be the next command given ; and its effect ?

A.—The captain will give “*Order arms*”, unless the drill instructor signifies that he is about to move

the square, in which case the captain's word will be "*Shoulder arms*". On the word "*arms*", the men will come to the 'order' (or 'shoulder', as the case may be), and will front into column; the captain and supernumeraries at the same time resuming their places on the flanks.

C. Q. 20.—What caution and command will be given by the drill instructor if he intends to move the column?

A.—He will merely give the caution "THE COLUMN WILL ADVANCE (RETIRE, or MOVE TO THE RIGHT or LEFT)". The captain will then repeat the caution and add the command "*Quick March*", preceded by the words "*Right-about* (or *To the right, or left*) *face*" if the column is to retire or move to a flank.

Q. 21.—When the instructor cautions the column to "*HALT*", will the captain, as before, repeat the caution and give a further word of command?

A.—He will at once give the executive word "*Halt*" followed by "*Order arms*".

Q. 22.—If the column has been retiring, or moving to a flank, should not the men be ordered to front?

A.—No; on halting they will, if necessary, front without word of command.

C. Q. 23.—How will the company be re-formed?

A.—The instructor will give the caution "RE-FORM COMPANY": on which the captain will direct the men to "*Unfix bayonets (or swords)*" and then give "*Re-form company—Quick March*".

Q. 24.—How will the sections move on the word "*company*"?

A.—The 1st section will face to the right; the 3rd and 4th to the left.

Q. 25.—On the word "*Quick March*"?

A.—Nos. 1, 3, and 4 sections will move out; getting into their places without word of command, as in the formation of the column.

Q. 26.—How will the men of those sections know when to make the turn that will bring them to their places?

A.—They should count the paces that take them into column; and will then have no difficulty in turning together at the right moment, in re-forming company.

Q. 27.—When in their places, do they come to the 'shoulder' or to the 'order'?

A.—To the 'order'.

Q. 28.—When do the captain, covering-serjeant, and C.L.E. supernumeraries take post in company? c.

A.—When the company is re-formed.

Section XXVI.—Forming Rallying Square.

(F. E., p. 111.)

Q. 1.—When is the rallying square used?

A.—In battalion light drill; when men of different companies mixed together in extended order, or detached skirmishers, are supposed to be overtaken by cavalry.

Q. 2.—When a company drilling singly is intended to form rallying square, how will the drill instructor proceed?

A.—He will cause the men to unfix bayonets, and to disperse; will place an officer (who will face the supposed enemy, and hold up his sword) as a rallying point; and will then give the word "FORM RALLYING SQUARE".

Q. 3.—On whom will the square be formed?

A.—On the officer placed by the drill instructor.

Q. 4.—How do the men place themselves as they reach that officer?

A.—The first two that reach him form on his right and left, facing outwards ; the next three place themselves in front of those posted, facing to the front ; and three others in rear, facing to the rear. The next four that join will take post at the several angles ; others, as they come up, will complete the several faces ; and so on.

Q. 5.—When the men have all formed, what will be the duty of the officer in the centre of the square, should any of the front ranks of faces be incomplete ?

A.—To order the vacancies to be filled up from the rear.

Q. 6.—When do the men fix their bayonets (or swords) ?

A.—As they successively join the square.

Q. 7.—Do they then come to the ‘shoulder’ ?

A.—No ; they remain at the ‘order’ .

Q. 8.—If the square is to move, what caution and command will be given ; and by whom ?

A.—The drill instructor will give the caution “THE SQUARE WILL ADVANCE (RETIRE, or MOVE TO THE RIGHT or LEFT)” : which will be repeated by the officer on whom the square is formed. The latter will then—having first ordered the men, if armed with the long rifle, to “*Shoulder arms*”—give the word “*Inwards face*” .

Q. 9.—Considering the manner in which the square was formed, will either of its faces be sufficiently dressed to move with the requisite regularity ?

A.—No ; and the officer will therefore order the leading face to dress before he puts the square in motion.

Q. 10.—What will the command “*Inwards face*” signify ?

A. That those men who are not already facing, will face, in the direction to which the square is to move.

Q. 11.—Which flank of which face will direct, when a square is moving?

A.—The square will march by the left of the leading face if advancing, or moving to the right; by the right of the leading face if retiring, or moving to the left.

Q. 12.—When the square is to halt, will the officer repeat the drill instructor's word "HALT"; and will the men, on halting, face outwards without word of command; as in the case of a company square?

A.—Yes.

Q. 13.—What command, however, will the men receive?

A.—"*Prepare for Cavalry*".

Q. 14.—Will they then assume the position of defence against cavalry?

A.—No; they will wait for the word "*Ready*".

Q. 15.—How will they, on that word, prepare for cavalry; and how, and by whose command, will they fire?

A.—They will prepare for cavalry, and fire, as described in the last Section (Q. 8–18): the firing words being given, on a caution from the drill instructor, by the officer on whom the square is formed.

Q. 16.—When the company is to be re-formed, what caution will be given?

A.—"*Re-form Company*"; by the drill instructor.

Q. 17.—On that caution, what will be done?

A.—The covering-serjeant will mark the spot where the pivot flank of the company is to rest, facing the supposed enemy. The officer on whom the square is formed will give "*Unfix bayonets (or swords)*", followed by "*Re-form company*", on which the men will form company on the covering-serjeant.

Q. 18.—What rules will be observed, when the drill instructor places *two* (or more) rallying points?

A.—Every man will run to the rallying point nearest

him : and the officers placed as rallying points will be placed in echelon with each other, so that each square may be able to fire.

Q. 19.—How will company be re-formed ?

A.—As directed in the A. to Q. 17 : the word “*Un-fix bayonets (or swords)*” being given to each square by the officer on whom it is formed, the word “*Re-form company*” by the captain.

Q. 20.—By what commands is a company dismissed off parade ?

A.—“**To THE RIGHT FACE.—LODGE ARMS**”.

Q. 21.—Suppose the men are at the ‘order’ ?

A.—In that case, before being faced to the right, they will be ordered to shoulder.

Q. 22.—On the word “**ARMS**”, how do the men proceed ?

A.—They come to the ‘port’ ; the front rank at the same time taking a side-pace to the left, the rear rank a side-pace to the right. After a pause the men will break off, and quietly leave the parade ; carrying their rifles at the ‘advance’ or, if *Riflemen*, at the ‘shoulder’.

Q. 23.—How does the supernumerary rank proceed ?

A.—Precisely as the rear rank.

Q. 24.—When men parade with side-arms only, how will they be dismissed ?

A.—By the word “**To THE RIGHT FACE.—BREAK OFF**” : on which they will proceed as above directed, except that, in place of bringing their rifles to the ‘port’, they will strike their hands together in front of their thighs.

*Section XXVII.—Formation of a Battalion
on Parade.*

(F. E., p. 222.)

Q. 1.—How does a battalion, as a general rule, assemble on parade?

A.—In open column of companies, right in front.

Q. 2.—When are the companies told off, inspected, and proved?

A.—On their private parades, before they are marched into column.

Q. 3.—How is the position which each company is to take in the column, marked?

A.—The covering-serjeants, under the adjutant's superintendence, will mark the spot where the pivot flank of their respective companies will rest; taking wheeling distance.

Q. 4.—Who, then, will march at the head of each company, when it moves from its private parade into column?

A.—Its senior supernumerary serjeant.

Q. 5.—When are companies in column said to be at 'wheeling distance'?

A.—When each company (except the leading one) is placed at a distance equal to its own front, including the space occupied by the captain, from the company immediately in front of it, measuring from the heels of the front rank of the one to the heels of the front rank of the next.

Q. 6.—How will the coverers hold their rifles, while taking distance for their companies in this case? c.

A.—At the 'recover': coming to the 'shoulder' on the word "STEADY" given by the adjutant when they are correctly covered.

Q. 7.—Will the position of the companies in the column be always the same?

A.—No; their order will frequently be changed, so that each in turn may lead the column.

Q. 8.—At what bugle sound will the companies march off into column?

A.—At the "ADVANCE".

C. Q. 9.—As each company gets to its place in column, will it be dressed as well as halted and fronted?

A.—Yes; when companies are first marched into column their captains will dress them and give the word "*Eyes front*".

Q. 10.—Will the captains then give any other command?

A.—They will give "*Order arms.—Stand at ease*".

L. E. Q. 11.—How do the captain and supernumeraries of each company take post?

A.—As in a single company 'as in column, right in front'. (*See p. 5. Q. 27, 29.*)

Q. 12.—Which are the places of the adjutant and majors, in column?

A.—The senior major will take post 2 paces from the reverse flank of the centre of the right wing; the junior major, 2 paces from the reverse flank of the centre of the left wing; the adjutant, 2 paces from the reverse flank of the right-centre company if right is in front, of the left-centre company if left is in front.

Q. 13.—Would both the majors take the places above mentioned, if the column were ordered to *advance* or *retire*?

A.—No; in that case the major of the leading wing would place himself in rear of the pivot flank of the 2nd company from the front (keeping clear of the line of company leaders), in order to superintend the direction of the column during the advance or retreat.

Q. 14.—Suppose there is only one major present, who will have to act as junior major?

A.—The senior captain should be mounted, and perform that duty; or, if that is impracticable, the adjutant will act as junior major.

Q. 15.—If it happens that there is only one mounted officer present (besides the commanding officer) ?

A.—He must be prepared to dress the coverers and pivots from either flank, or to give distant points as may be required.

Q. 16.—What are the mounted officers' duties, when not employed in giving points or dressing the coverers (or pivots) ?

A.—To correct mistakes : and, generally, to assist the commanding officer during manœuvres.

Q. 17.—When do the mounted officers take up their proper places in line or column ?

A.—When each movement is executed : or, if not engaged in giving or dressing points, during the movement.

Q. 18.—What is the usual place of the commanding officer, in open column ?

A.—On the pivot flank of the leading company.

Q. 19.—By whom are the colours carried, and how is the colour party formed ?

A.—Each colour is carried by an officer ; the Queen's colour being on the right, the regimental colour on the left, with a serjeant between them : the rear rank of the colour party is composed of two non-commissioned officers or steady men, with a serjeant between them.

Q. 20.—What term is applied to the serjeant between the colours, and to the serjeant in the centre of the rear rank of the colour party ?

A.—They are called the front-rank and rear-rank '*centre serjeants*' ; being in the centre of the battalion when it is formed in line.

Q. 21.—How is the colour party posted in column ?

A.—In rear of the right-centre company if the column is right in front ; in rear of the left-centre company if left is in front ; one pace distant from the rear rank. They cover the 3rd, 4th, and 5th files

from the pivot flank of the company of which they are in rear.

Q. 22.—Is the colour party always formed in two ranks, when in column?

A.—Yes; except in one instance, *viz.* when the column is at close distance. The colour party will, in that case, be between the two centre companies, but (necessarily) formed in *single* rank: *see* Section XXXV. Q. 5, 6.

Q. 23.—Where are the band, drummers, and pioneers posted, when a battalion forms singly on parade?

A.—The band and drums will be placed in several ranks, 12 paces in front of the leading company; the pioneers, formed two-deep and led by a corporal, 6 paces in front of the band.

Q. 24.—Which will be the places of the band; and of the drummers, fifers, buglers, and pioneers; when the battalion is manœuvring?

A.—The band will remain on the reverse flank: the drummers, &c. will join their companies, taking post in the supernumerary rank.

Q. 25.—When a battalion in line breaks into open column right in front *preparatory to marching past*, will the band remain on the flank of the column, and the drummers, &c. join their companies?

A.—No: *see* Section LXIV.

Q. 26.—How will the battalion, when formed in column, be *told off*?

A.—Into 'right' and 'left' companies, and by wings.

C. Q. 27.—What word will be given by the battalion commander; and to whom will it apply?

A.—"TELL OFF THE BATTALION"; on which each captain will take a pace to his front, and will face to the right. The captain of the leading company will then call out "Number 1, *right company*"; the captain of No. 2, "Number 2, *left company*"; the captain of No. 3, "Number 3, *right company*"; and so on to the rear of the column.

Q. 28.—Odd numbers, then, are termed ‘right’, and even numbers ‘left’, companies?

A.—Yes; like the odd and even files in a company.

Q. 29.—When, and how, do the captains resume C. their places on the flanks of their companies?

A.—When the battalion commander, after naming the companies which are to form the right and left wings, gives “EYES FRONT”: by fronting, and then taking a pace to the rear.

Q. 30.—When companies in column are to be *inspected*, what word will be given by the battalion commander?

A.—“REAR RANKS TAKE OPEN ORDER.—MARCH”.

Q. 31.—How will the company officers and covering- C.L.E. serjeants proceed? C.

A.—The captain, coverer, and supernumeraries of each company will act precisely as explained in *Section III.*, for a company in *line* taking open order; the companies being considered, for the time being, independent companies. The supernumerary rank, on the word “MARCH”, will step back 4 paces.

Q. 32.—What word will then be given; and by whom?

A.—“LEADING COMPANY, STAND FAST. REMAINING COMPANIES, ORDER ARMS.—STAND AT EASE”; by the battalion commander.

Q. 33.—How does each captain act, as the inspecting officer approaches him? C.

A.—He receives him with a salute; having first called his men to *attention*, and directed them to shoulder arms.

Q. 34.—Are not the men to present arms?

A.—No.

Q. 35.—Does the captain accompany the inspecting officer through the ranks? C.

A.—Yes; in order to answer any questions that may be put to him respecting the company.

C. Q. 36.—The inspection of the company being finished, what will be the captain's duty?

A.—To close the ranks, and direct the men to order arms and stand at ease.

L. E. Q. 37.—Do the officers and coverer then take post as with a company in line?

A.—No; the company, when its inspection is finished, is no longer considered as an independent company; and the captain, coverer, and supernumeraries will take their proper places in column.

Q. 38.—What relation have battalion movements to the manœuvres of a brigade?

A.—The same that the formations of a single company bear to the evolutions of a battalion; the drill of the smaller body being, in each case, a preparation for that of the larger.

Q. 39.—When a battalion is formed for exercise, are the companies generally equalized?

A.—Yes: but it should also be frequently practised in companies of unequal strength.

Q. 40.—When a battalion is formed in open column with others, how are the band, drummers, and pioneers drawn up?

A.—The band and drums, 2 paces from the reverse flank of the centre of the battalion; the pioneers 2 paces from the reverse flank of the leading company.

[The manner in which an open Column wheels into Line, is described in *Section XLVIII.*]

Section XXVIII.—A Battalion in Line taking Open order, and resuming Close order.

(F. E., p. 232.)

Q. 1—How are the companies drawn up, when a battalion is formed in line?

A.—Without any interval between them, except the

space required for the colour party, which is placed between the two centre companies.

Q. 2.—Suppose the battalion formed in line at *close* order; how is each company arranged?

A.—As described in *Section I.*, for a company ‘as in line’: except the company on the left of the line, which will have its senior subaltern (covered by a supernumerary serjeant) on its left flank.

Q. 3.—Which will be the commanding officer’s place?

A.—About 25 paces in rear of the colours.

Q. 4.—Where are the other mounted officers posted?

A.—The first major is 6 paces in rear of the centre of the right wing: the second major 6 paces in rear of the centre of the left wing. The adjutant is 6 paces in rear of the colours.

Q. 5.—Will the commanding officer and other mounted officers occupy the same places when a battalion is *advancing* in line?

A.—Yes: except that when the battalion is drilling singly, the commanding officer may *occasionally* be in front.

Q. 6.—How is the colour party arranged?

A.—As described in the last *Section*. (Q. 19.)

Q. 7.—What is the principal duty of the centre serjeants?

A.—To direct the line when advancing or retiring. (*See Section XXIX.*)

Q. 8.—Where are the band, drummers, and pioneers posted, when a battalion is formed in line at close order?

A.—The band, formed in two ranks and at loose files, is in rear of the centre of the line; the drummers, fifers, and buglers are assembled in two divisions, in rear of the 2nd companies from the right and left

96 A BATTALION IN LINE TAKING OPEN ORDER.

respectively ; and the pioneers, formed two-deep, are in rear of the centre of the right-flank company. The whole are 9 paces from the supernumerary rank.

Q. 9.—Where are the staff-officers and staff-serjeants posted ?

A.—The former, 3 paces in rear of the band ; the latter, in rear of the centre of the battalion, in line with the supernumerary rank.

C.L.E. Q. 10.—When the line is to take open order,
c. what caution will be given ; and to whom will it apply ?

A.—“REAR RANK TAKE OPEN ORDER” : which will apply to the officers, covering-serjeant, and rear-rank right-hand man of each company ; the serjeant-major ; the rear-rank man on the left of the line ; and the majors and adjutant.

Q. 11.—How do the officers and coverer of each company move ?

A.—As explained in *Section III.*, Q. 5-7.

Q. 12.—How do the rear-rank right-hand men of companies, and the rear-rank man on the left of the line, act ?

A.—They take 2 paces to the rear ; face to their right ; and cover, under the superintendence of the serjeant-major, who will move in rear of the right of the line on the caution.

Q. 13.—The mounted officers ?

A.—The senior major will move up to the right of the front rank ; the junior major and adjutant to its left.

C.L.E. Q. 14.—What command is next given ; and to whom
c. will it apply ?

A.—“MARCH” : which will apply to all the officers, and the rear and supernumerary ranks of the whole line.

Q. 15.—Will the band, drummers, and pioneers stand fast?

A.—Yes: they will remain as posted at close order.

Q. 16.—How will the officers and serjeants, and the C.L.E. right-hand rear-rank man, of each company proceed c. on the word "MARCH"?

A.—Precisely as explained in the *Section* (III.) above referred to: except that the serjeant on the right of the supernumerary rank of each company will only dress the *rear* rank; and that the captains will not dress their subalterns after moving out to the front of the line.

Q. 17.—The mounted and staff officers, and the colours?

A.—The officers carrying the colours take 3 paces to their front, and dress with the line of officers; the senior major places himself on the right of the line of officers, the junior major on its left; the adjutant remains on the left of the front rank; the staff-officers place themselves on the right of the front rank, at one pace distance. The lieutenant-colonel will place himself 6, the colonel (if present) 10, paces in front of the colours.

Q. 18.—By whom will the intervals left by the officers who carry the colours, be filled up?

A.—By the serjeants by whom those officers are covered at close order.

Q. 19.—By whom will the supernumerary rank when it has stepped back, and the company officers when they have moved out, be dressed?

A.—The serjeant-major will dress the whole of the supernumerary rank and will give "*Eyes front*"; the senior major will dress the officers and give "*STEADY*".

Q. 20.—How do the officers act on the word C.L.E. "*STEADY*"?

A.—They port their swords, and look to their front.

Q. 21.—When will the right-hand man of the rear rank of each company drop his arm?

A.—When the word "*Eyes front*" is given by the supernumerary serjeant who has dressed that rank. See p. 10, Q. 12, 17.

Q. 22.—When the sergeant-major has dressed the supernumerary rank, where will he fall in?

A.—On the right of the staff-serjeants.

Q. 23.—In what should the battalion be practised, while at open order?

A.—In the salute with which a reviewing officer is received: see Section LXIV.

C.L.E. Q. 24.—What caution will be given when the line is to resume close order; and whom will it cause to move?

A.—"REAR RANK TAKE CLOSE ORDER". On that word, the officers of each company face to the right and recover swords, the officers who carry the colours facing with the rest: the staff-officers face inwards; and the mounted officers turn their horses' heads to the right.

Q. 25.—What command is next given?

A.—"MARCH": on which the rear and supernumerary ranks, and the officers and covering-serjeant of each company, act as directed in *Section III.*; and the mounted and staff-officers move to their respective posts at close order.

Q. 26.—Before manoeuvring commences, what order will be given to the drummers, fifers, buglers, and pioneers?

A.—They will be directed to take post with their respective companies.

Section XXIX.—Advancing and Retiring in Line.

(F. E., p. 236.)

Q. 1.—When a battalion in line is to advance, what caution will be given by the commander; and to whom will it apply?

A.—“THE LINE WILL ADVANCE”: on which the centre serjeant will select points to march on, and the adjutant will superintend the selection of those points.

Q. 2.—The direction being determined, what word is given, and by whom?

A.—“STEADY”; by the adjutant.

Q. 3.—Will that word cause any person to move?

A.—No: it is merely a signal to the commanding officer that the battalion is in readiness to be marched off.

Q. 4.—During the advance, to what points should the attention of every person in the line be directed?

A.—He must be careful to keep his shoulders and body square to the front, preserving a light touch towards the centre of the line; and must recollect that should he lose the touch (through the men on his inward flank obliquing inwards), it is not to be regained by any sudden effort, but gradually.

Q. 5.—Will every individual in the battalion step off on the command “QUICK MARCH”?

A.—No; the serjeant-major and adjutant, in order to ascertain the correctness of the line of march, remain halted in the rear of the centre until the battalion has advanced 20 or 30 paces.

Q. 6.—When a battalion advances in line, which is the commander’s usual place?

A.—About 25 paces in rear of the colours.

Q. 7.—If the line is to *retire*, when will it be faced about?

A.—Not until everything is prepared for its instant march ; it being a rule that troops should never stand unnecessarily faced to the rear.

Q. 8.—On the caution “THE LINE WILL RETIRE”, who will move ?

A.—The colour party will face to the right-about ; and the two files on the left of the right-centre company take two paces to the rear, and one pace outwards from each other, thus leaving an interval through which the serjeant-major and adjutant pass to the proper front of the line in order to superintend the direction.

Q. 9.—Do the officers carrying the colours align themselves with the proper rear rank on facing to the rear ?

A.—No : they remain aligned with the proper front rank.

C.L.E. Q. 10.—Do the officers and covering-serjeants, also, occupy the same places when the line retires as when it advances ?

A.—Yes : see p. 13, Q. 15.

Q. 11.—The adjutant having given “STEADY”, what will follow ?

A.—The battalion commander will give the word “RIGHT-ABOUT FACE”.

Q. 12.—By whom is a line, while retiring, directed ?

A.—By the rear-rank centre serjeant.

Q. 13.—When, and how, do the adjutant and serjeant-major resume their places in the proper rear of the line ?

A.—On the command “BATTALION; HALT, FRONT” : passing, as before, through an interval made by the two files on the left of the right-centre company.

Q. 14.—When will those files, in each instance, resume their places ?

A.—As soon as the serjeant-major and adjutant have passed through the line.

Section XXX.—Charging in Line.

(F. E., p. 237.)

Q. 1.—When a battalion advancing in line is to charge, what caution will be given by the commander?

A.—“**PREPARE TO CHARGE**”.

Q. 2.—To what position will the rifles be brought?

A.—Those of the front rank to the ‘trail’; those of the rear rank will continue at the ‘slope’.

Q. 3.—What is the rule with respect to *Riflemen* when intended to charge?

A.—They will, in the first instance, advance (in quick time, and with swords fixed) at the ‘shoulder’; and on the caution “**PREPARE to CHARGE**”, the front rank will trail and the rear rank will slope.

Q. 4.—What is there to remark, in the directions given (Q. 2, 3) for the front-rank men?

A.—That this is the only instance in which the ‘trail’ is used with bayonets (or swords) fixed.

Q. 5.—What points should be particularly attended to by the front-rank men, in coming to the ‘trail’?

A.—That they do so without altering the square position of the body, or the regularity of the step.

Q. 6.—What command will immediately follow the caution?

A.—“**CHARGE**”; on which the whole break into *double* time: the men of the front rank bringing their rifles to the ‘charge’, those of the rear rank retaining theirs at the ‘slope’.

Q. 7.—When the command “**HALT**” is given, will the rifles still be kept at the ‘charge’ and ‘slope’?

A.—No: the instant the line halts, the rifles of both ranks will be brought to the ‘shoulder’: which rule also applies to *Riflemen*.

Q. 8.—Will the men, on being halted, correct their dressing?

A.—No; in whatever position they may be, they will remain perfectly steady.

Section XXXI.—Dressing a Battalion in Line.

(F. E., p. 238.)

Q. 1.—When a battalion is to be dressed, after an advance or retreat in line, what word is given by the commander?

A.—“THE BATTALION WILL DRESS BY THE RIGHT (*or Left*). COVERERS, — PACES TO THE FRONT”.

C. L. Q. 2.—What officers will move on that caution?

A.—The captains; who if the dressing is to be by the *right*, will take one pace to their front and one pace to their left; if by the *left*, will change flanks, their lieutenants changing with them as usual: and the officer on the left of the line, who will, in either case, take one pace to his left.

Q. 3.—Will the captains in changing their flanks (if the dressing is to be by the left), move up as usual on the left of their front rank?

A.—No; they will remain in rear till the next word is given.

c. Q. 4.—How will the coverers move, on the caution to dress, say, by the *right*?

A.—They move up into their captains' places.

Q. 5.—If dressing is to be by the *left*, will they change flanks (as usual) with their captains?

A.—No; they will, by falling to the rear, make way for the captains to pass, and will then move up on the right of the front rank of their companies.

Q. 6.—How will they proceed when the battalion commander gives “QUICK MARCH”?

A.—They will move out the named number of paces straight to their front, face to the named flank, and cover; the coverer of the officer on the left of the line moving out with the rest.

Q. 7.—How do the coverers hold their rifles while moving out to the front, and when they face to the named flank?

A.—They move out at the ‘shoulder’; coming to the ‘recover’ as they face.

Q. 8.—By whom will all the coverers, when in a line, be dressed?

A.—By the major on the named flank.

Q. 9.—When will the captains fall back into their places on the right, or (if the dressing is to be by the *left*) move up on the left, of their companies?

A.—As soon as the coverers, having got the word “**QUICK MARCH**”, have moved out of the line.

Q. 10.—Suppose the dressing is to be by the *left*, where will the captain of the left-flank company place himself, when he moves up?

A.—Outside the officer on the left of the line.

Q. 11.—What will be the next word given?

A.—“**STEADY**”; by the major who has dressed the coverers.

Q. 12.—Will it cause anybody to move?

A.—No: it is only a signal to the commanding officer.

Q. 13.—What follows?

A.—The command “**BATTALION, QUICK MARCH**” is given by the commanding officer.

Q. 14.—Will the commanding officer give the command “**HALT, DRESS UP**”, when the line reaches the points?

A.—No; each captain, as his company arrives within 2 paces of the line of dressing, will give “*No. — : halt, dress up*”, moving out, and dressing his men from the named flank.

Q. 15.—What will be done by each coverer, as his company approaches him?

A.—He will hold out his inner arm (*i.e.* the arm nearest to the line) at right angles to his body, with the fist clenched.

C.

c.

c. Q. 16.—What will he do with his rifle?
 A.—He will hold it at the position of the ‘recover’ with the hand of the outer arm; steadying it by resting the toe of the butt against his chest.

Q. 17.—How long will he keep his arm extended?
 A.—Only till the man opposite to his fist is steady. He will then resume the regular ‘recover’.

Q. 18.—Do coverers always give points in this manner when their companies move up to dress upon them?
 A.—Invariably. See Secs. XLIX-LIII.

C. Q. 19.—When will the captain of each company take post on its right?
 A.—When he has dressed it, and given “*Eyes front*”.

c. Q. 20.—Will the coverer, also, move to his place on that word?
 A.—No; the major who dressed the coverers will, when the dressing of all the companies is completed, give a second word “*STEADY*”, and they will *then* take post in line.

C. Q. 21.—How will they pass through the line?
 A.—The captains will make way for them to pass to the rear, in the same manner as to the front when the dressing is to be by the right. (Q. 2.)

Section XXXII.—Advuncing and Retiring by Wings, and Firing.

(F. E., p. 239.)

Q. 1.—When a battalion is moving by wings, by whom will each wing be commanded?

A.—The senior major will take command of the right wing, the junior major of the left wing.

Q. 2.—Suppose a battalion is on the march, when required to fire and advance by wings?

A.—Before receiving the caution, it will invariably be halted.

Q. 3.—What will be the caution ?

A.—“THE BATTALION WILL FIRE AND ADVANCE BY WINGS”: given by the battalion commander.

Q. 4.—Which wing will advance first, and when will it be marched off ?

A.—The right ; the instant the left wing has fired.

Q. 5.—Will the left wing, then, get the firing words immediately on the battalion commander's caution ?

A.—Yes ; from the junior major.

Q. 6.—What are the firing words ?

A.—“LEFT WING, FIRE A VOLLEY, AT — YARDS. READY—PRESENT”.

Q. 7.—When will the right wing be halted, and ordered to fire ?

A.—It will be halted when it has advanced 30 paces, and will get the firing words when the left wing (having re-loaded, and been ordered to shoulder) gets “QUICK MARCH”.

Q. 8.—Will the left wing, in like manner, advance 30 paces before it is halted ?

A.—Yes ; and will be ordered to fire as the right wing (having given its fire, re-loaded, and been directed to shoulder) gets “QUICK MARCH” : the wings moving thus, alternately, till line is re-formed.

Q. 9.—Where do the captains of each wing march ? C.

A.—They remain posted as in line.

Q. 10.—Where does the colour party march ?

A.—The officer carrying the Queen's colour on the left of the right-centre company, the front-rank and rear-rank centre serjeants moving with him in their usual places : the officer carrying the regimental colour marches on the right of the left-centre company.

Q. 11.—The adjutant, and serjeant-major ?

A.—The adjutant marches in rear of the inner flank of the right wing, the serjeant-major in rear of the inner flank of the left ; superintending the direction.

Q. 12.—To which flank do the men touch?

A.—To the inner flank of their wing : the right wing being led by the front-rank centre serjeant, the left wing by the regimental colour.

Q. 13.—When line is ordered to be formed on the leading wing, will the covering-serjeants of the rear wing move out to give points for their companies?

A.—No.

Q. 14.—If the left wing is in rear, by whose command will it march up to, and halt in, the line?

A.—By that of the junior major.

Q. 15.—How does a battalion fire and retire by wings?

A.—The commanding officer gives the caution “THE BATTALION WILL FIRE AND RETIRE by WINGS”. The junior major then orders the left wing to fire, and, when re-loaded, to shoulder, face about, and retire.

Q. 16.—How many paces will the left wing be allowed to retire, before it is halted and fronted?

A.—Fifteen paces.

Q. 17.—What commands will be given by the senior major to the right wing, as the left is ordered to halt?

A.—He will order it to fire, and (when it has loaded) to shoulder, face-about, and retire till 15 paces beyond the left wing ; and will then give “HALT, FRONT”.

Q. 18.—Will the left wing then be ordered to fire?

A.—Yes ; and thus the wings will proceed alternately.

Q. 19.—Suppose a battalion is cautioned to “FIRE AND RETIRE by WINGS”, while *marching to the rear*?

A.—The right wing will, in that case, be ordered by its commander to “HALT, FRONT” ; and when the left wing (having moved on 15 paces) receives the command “HALT, FRONT”, will get the firing words.

Q. 20.—How do the officers and colours move, in retiring by wings?

A.—Precisely as in the advance by wings.

Q. 21.—When a battalion (or, as in this *Section*, a wing of a battalion) receives the caution “*FIRE A VOLLEY*”, what is done by the rear rank?

A.—If the men are armed with the long rifle, it closes up a pace of 9 inches.

Q. 22.—Why not if *Riflemen*?

A.—Because *Riflemen* invariably fire front rank kneeling: the front rank going down on the knee at the word “*Ready*”, and rising to re-load.

Q. 23.—When does the rear rank, if closed up, resume its usual distance?

A.—As the men come to the ‘shoulder’.

Q. 24.—Do the same rules hold good in File-firing?

A.—Yes: except that in the case of *Riflemen*, the front-rank men go down on the knee at the word “*Commence*”, and do not rise to re-load.

Section XXXIII.—When a Battalion advancing in Line passes Obstacles.

(F. E., p. 241.)

Q. 1—How will a battalion advancing in line pass obstacles in its front?

A.—If the obstacles are small, and opposite to *parts* of the line, only the files impeded by them need break off, which they will do as from the flank of a company in column (*see Section XXIV.*); moving up again to the front the moment they are able to do so. If the obstacles are more considerable, and affect the entire

front of the line, all the companies will break into fours.

Q. 2.—Supposing the obstacles are such that the *former* of those methods can be adopted, to what points should particular attention be given?

A.—The men who remain in line must continue moving straight to their front; neither closing on the intervals left by the men who have fallen to the rear, nor pressing upon the remainder of the battalion should the obstacle increase in breadth.

Q. 3.—What rule should be observed in breaking off the files?

A.—They should invariably turn in rear of the company to which they belong; or, if the obstacle is in front of the centre of their company, should turn to the right and wheel to the left. If the line, while broken, is halted, the broken-off files will form in rear of the obstacles, in lines parallel to the front.

Q. 4.—What will be gained by their so forming?

A.—The line will appear to the enemy unbroken; and all the men will be able to give their fire.

Q. 5.—Suppose a whole company or subdivision is broken off?

A.—It will move, not in files, but in fours; and the same rule applies to files successively broken off till they amount to a subdivision.

Q. 6.—When it is necessary that all the companies should break into fours, what caution is given?

A.—“**FROM THE RIGHT (or LEFT) OF COMPANIES PASS BY FOURS TO THE FRONT**”; followed by the command “**FORM FOURS, RIGHT; LEFT WHEEL**” or “**FORM FOURS, LEFT; RIGHT WHEEL**”.

C. Q. 7.—Where do the captains march when the companies have passed by fours into column?

A.—On that flank of their leading four which is nearest to the company of direction: keeping their

distance from that company as far as circumstances will allow.

Q. 8.—Which will be the company of direction ?

A.—The battalion commander may order any company to direct : if none is named, that which would be at the head of the column if "FRONT TURN" were given, will direct.

Q. 9.—Where do the supernumeraries march in the L. E. column ?

A.—In their usual places in fours.

Q. 10.—How does the colour party move ?

A.—Precisely as a company, but in file ; occupying its proper place in rear of the left-centre or right-centre company, as the case may be.

Q. 11.—The mounted officers, and the serjeant-major ?

A.—The major of the leading wing superintends the dressing of the heads of companies : the other major and the adjutant follow the rear four of the company they respectively covered in line. The serjeant-major marches on the outward flank of the centre serjeants.

Q. 12.—If it is required to form square, what command will be given ?

A.—"SQUARE ON THE LEFT (*or* RIGHT) CENTRE COMPANY : WINGS INWARDS TURN". (*See Sec. LV.*)

Q. 13.—How may line be re-formed ?

A.—By the companies being halted and fronted into column ; and then wheeled into line as described in *Section XLVIII.* Or, if the ground permits, each company may form on its leading file ; that file, if the formation is to be in *double* time, continuing to advance ; if in *quick* time, marking time till "FORWARD" is given to the whole. (*See Section XX.*)

Q. 14.—If the latter of those methods is adopted, C. will the captains proceed as directed in *Section XX.*?

A.—Only if the companies advanced from the *left*.

110 A BATTALION IN LINE PASSING OBSTACLES.

Q. 15.—Is there not still another way by which a line may pass obstacles?

A.—There is; but the movement is to be considered an exceptional one. The line may advance by double fours, or files, from the centre; the command being, “**BY DOUBLE FOURES (or FILES) FROM THE CENTRE: FORM FOURES, INWARDS (or INWARDS TURN), RIGHT AND LEFT WHEEL**”.

Q. 16.—What will be the effect of that command?

A.—Each wing will advance, like a single company, in fours (or files) from its inner flank. (Compare *Section XXIV.* Q. 12-14.)

L. E. Q. 17.—How will there be room for the colours and supernumeraries?

A.—The colour party will move between the two centre companies in single rank, the front rank leading, and both ranks right in front; the Queen’s colour between the two leading files (or fours). All the supernumeraries will march in one rank between the wings.

Section XXXIV. — When a Battalion retiring in Line passes Obstacles, or marches through a relieving Line.

(F. E., p. 245.)

Q. 1.—What caution and command will be given, when a battalion retiring in line is to pass by fours into column to the rear?

A.—“**FROM THE PROPER RIGHT (or LEFT) OF COMPANIES PASS BY FOURES TO THE REAR. FORM FOURES, LEFT; RIGHT WHEEL (or FORM FOURES, RIGHT; LEFT WHEEL)**”.

C.L.E. Q. 2.—Where will the commanders and supernumeraries of companies march; and which company will direct?

A.—See *Section XXXIII.*, Q. 7-9.

Q. 3.—How may the battalion re-form line to its proper front?

A.—Either by halting and fronting into column, and then wheeling into line; or by each company forming to the right-about, or left-about, on its leading file.

Q. 4.—What advantage may be gained by the latter of those methods; and how will the coverers proceed when it is adopted? c.

A.—Each file, as it arrives in its place, can at once take up the fire. The coverers will be called out and dressed in line before the heads of the companies reach them.

Q. 5.—Will the coverers be so placed, in order that their respective companies may form upon them?

A.—No: the company at the proper head of the column will march upon, and form round, its senior supernumerary serjeant (who will be called out at the same time as the coverers); each of the other companies marching upon, and forming round, the coverer of the company that is in its front in column. (See Section XX., Q. 17-24.)

Q. 6.—Will the senior supernumerary serjeant of any, besides the proper front, company be called out at the same time as the coverers?

A.—No: the remaining companies will not require to have their inner flank marked.

Q. 7.—What term is applied to the line marked by the coverer and senior supernumerary serjeant of the leading company of the column?

A.—It is called ‘the base of formation’. (See Sec. XLIX.)

Q. 8.—May line be re-formed to the proper rear?

A.—Yes, if the retreat is to be continued; by the command “REAR FORM COMPANIES.—FORWARD”.

Q. 9.—Is not this movement (passing by fours to the rear) applied to another purpose than passing through woods or other impediments?

A.—Yes ; by it a retiring line passes through a line by which it is to be relieved.

Q. 10.—Should that be the object of the movement, when does the line which is to be relieved break into fours?

A.—When it arrives at 12 paces from the relieving line.

Q. 11.—Suppose a battalion *halted* in the front line, is to be relieved by another advancing in its rear ; what command will the former receive, and when ?

A.—“**FROM THE RIGHT OF COMPANIES PASS BY FOURS TO THE REAR. FORM FOURE, RIGHT. RIGHT WHEEL : QUICK MARCH**” ; when the relieving line arrives within a company’s wheeling distance.

Q. 12.—Is it a matter of indifference which of the two lines breaks into column ?

A.—No ; the relieving line is, for obvious reasons, never (except for purposes of parade) to be broken into column : when the fours of the other line approach, a sufficient number of files of the relieving line give way, to allow them to pass through to the rear.

Section XXXV.—Forming Close or Quarter-distance Column from any more open Column.

(F. E., p. 249.)

Q. 1.—At what distance from each other are the companies, when in column at close, and quarter distance respectively ?

A.—In *close* column, the companies are 2 paces distant from each other, measuring from the heels of the rear rank of one company to the heels of the front rank of the next : in a *quarter-distance* column, the space between companies will equal that occupied by each of their flank sections.

Q. 2.—Is the arrangement of the officers, &c., of C.L.E. each company, in a close or quarter-distance column, the same as in open column?

A.—Yes: unless the battalion is one of a *brigade* changing position, in which case captains will be on that flank of the column which is next to the directing battalion, irrespective of whether right or left is in front: or, unless the column is a close one taking ground to a flank by fours (*see Sec. XL., Q. 10, 11.*)

Q. 3.—Where will the band be formed?

A.—In the rear, in two ranks, when the column is alone or (in brigade) in a line of columns: on the reverse flank, in several ranks, when the column (in brigade) is in mass.

Q. 4.—Are the mounted officers posted as in open column?

A.—Yes: except that when a close or quarter-distance column is *on the march*, the major of the rear wing will superintend the direction from the rear of the line of captains.

Q. 5.—How does the colour party form in *close* column?

A.—In single rank between the two centre companies.

Q. 6.—How will that single rank be arranged; and when will the ordinary formation be resumed?

A.—The rear-rank serjeants will form on the right of the front rank if the column is right in front, on the left of it if left is in front. The ordinary formation of the colour party will be resumed when the column opens out to quarter (or any greater) distance.

Q. 7.—What caution is given when a close or quarter-distance column is to be formed from any more open column?

A.—“THE COLUMN WILL CLOSE TO THE FRONT (*or Rear*)”, or “TO QUARTER DISTANCE ON THE FRONT (*or*

114 CLOSING AN OPEN OR QUARTER-DISTANCE COLUMN.

REAR) COMPANY": or, if the closing is to be on a central company, "**THE COLUMN WILL CLOSE ON (OR TO QUARTER DISTANCE ON) NO. — COMPANY**".

Q. 8.—What will be the effect of that caution?

A.—A mounted officer will move to the battalion point of *appui*, to superintend the covering of the captains; and, if necessary, a base point will be given by the coverer of the named company.

c. Q. 9.—If the column is ordered to close to, or to quarter distance on, the front or rear company: where will the coverer of the named company place himself?

A.—If it is the front company, he will place himself 6 paces in front of his captain, facing towards him, and covering on the line of captains: if it is the rear company, he will place himself 6 paces in rear of his captain, covering in like manner.

Q. 10.—How will he hold his rifle?

A.—At the 'recover'.

Q. 11.—If the column is to close on a *central* company, what base point will be given?

A.—None will be required; as the captains in front and rear of the named company will be a sufficient guide to each other.

C. Q. 12.—Which will, in that case, be the point of *appui*?

A.—The captain of the named company.

Q. 13.—By what command will the caution to "CLOSE" be followed?

A.—"REMAINING COMPANIES, QUICK MARCH": preceded by the command "RIGHT-ABOUT FACE" to those companies, if any, which are in front of the named one.

C. Q. 14.—How will the formation proceed?

A.—Each company in succession will be halted (and, if necessary, fronted) by its captain, when it arrives at the specified distance from the named company.

Q. 15.—How may a company leader take any ordered distance from the company next in his front or rear?

A.—The number of 30-inch paces required for the front of any company, will be obtained with sufficient accuracy by multiplying the number of its files by 7, and cutting off the right-hand figure of the result. A company leader, therefore, having once ascertained the number of paces required for the front of his company, can at any time, by counting his paces, take wheeling, half, or quarter distance from the company next in his front or rear.

Q. 16.—When will the covering-serjeant giving the base point, if one is given, come to the 'shoulder' and resume his place in column?

A.—On the mounted officer's word "STEADY".

Q. 17.—Where, and how, will the serjeant-major be employed while the column closes?

A.—On the reverse flank of the column; correcting, if necessary, the parallel dressing of the companies as they are halted by their captains.

Q. 18.—If a column is *advancing*, by what command does it close on the leading company?

A.—"CLOSE TO THE FRONT (or TO QUARTER DISTANCE ON THE LEADING COMPANY)".

Q. 19.—What word will be given by the captain of the leading company, on that command?

A.—He will give his company "*Halt, dress*".

Q. 20.—Will the covering-serjeant of the leading company give a base point?

A.—Yes: the coverer, on his captain's word "*Halt, dress*", will step out and give a point in the same manner as when the column closes from the halt.

Q. 21.—May a column on the march close *without halting*?

A.—Yes; on its leading company.

Q. 22.—What caution will precede the command “CLOSE TO THE FRONT”?

A.—The caution “ON THE MARCH”.

C. Q. 23.—Will that caution effect any change in the column?

A.—No: the column will move steadily forward until the following command “REMAINING COMPANIES, DOUBLE” is given; when every company (except the leading one, which will continue moving in quick time) will break into double time, till, having gained the required distance, it receives from its captain the word “Quick”.

Section XXXVI.—A Close or Quarter-distance Column Opening from the Front, the Rear, or any named Company.

(F. E., p. 251.)

c. Q. 1.—To whom will the caution “OPEN TO QUARTER (or WHEELING) DISTANCE FROM THE FRONT” apply?

A.—To the covering-serjeant of the leading company, who will place himself, as a base point, 6 paces in front of his captain, whom (and the remaining captains) he will face towards and cover; to the major of the leading wing, who will move up to superintend the captains’ covering; and to the adjutant, who will mark the spot where the pivot flank of the rear of the column will rest.

Q. 2.—When a column is cautioned to open from the rear, what points are given?

A.—The base point is given by the covering-serjeant of the rear company, 6 paces in rear of his captain: the adjutant will mark the alignment, at the wheeling distance of a company from the spot where the pivot flank of the head of the column will rest.

Q. 3.—Who will halt each company when it has C.
acquired the named distance ?

A.—When the column opens from the *front*, each company will receive the command "*Halt, front, dress*" from its own captain : but when the opening is from the *rear*, each captain will give the word "*Halt*" to the company in his front. (Q. 8.)

Q. 4.—In opening from the front, on what point will the captain of the rear company march, when the companies (except the leading one) have been faced about?

A.—On the head of the adjutant's horse, which will be dressed on the line of captains.

Q. 5.—If the rear companies, in opening from the front, have to pass over rough or broken ground which cannot be measured by pacing, what will be each of their covering-serjeants' duty ?

A.—To run out when the company in his proper front is halted; and placing himself at the ordered distance, clear of the flank of the column, to mark the ground in a line with which his captain will give the command "*Halt, front : dress*".

Q. 6.—How will the captain of each company that has been faced-about, know when to give his word "*Halt, front*"?

A.—By counting his paces : *see p. 115, Q. 15.*

Q. 7.—When will he commence counting ?

A.—When the company next in his present rear is halted.

Q. 8.—When the opening is from the *rear*: on what point will the captain of the leading company march ; and how will each captain proceed when his company is halted by the captain next in rear (Q. 3)?

A.—The captain of the leading company will march on the head of the adjutant's horse. Each captain, when, having himself been halted, he has at the proper time given "*Halt*" to the company in his front, will face about, correct his covering on the base points front, and give "*Dress*" to his own company.

C.

c.

Q. 9.—In each case, how will the coverer giving the base point hold his rifle; and when will he take post with his company?

A.—As directed in Sec. XXXV., Q. 10, 16.

Q. 10.—When the opening is from a *central* company, how does the movement proceed?

A.—The companies in front of the named one proceed in precisely the same manner as when the column opens from the rear; those in rear as when the opening is from the front: the junior major gives a point for the left-wing captains to march on, the adjutant a point for the right-wing captains; and the other major superintends the captains' covering, from the battalion point of *appui*.

Q. 11.—Which will be the battalion point of *appui*?

A.—The captain of the named company.

Q. 12.—How is a close or quarter-distance column *on the march*, opened from the rear?

A.—On the caution “OPEN TO QUARTER (*or WHEELING*) DISTANCE FROM THE REAR”, the rear company is halted by its captain; and the movement then proceeds as when done from the halt. (Q. 8, 8.)

C. Q. 13.—When a halted close or quarter-distance column (suppose right in front) is required to *advance at more open distance* from the front, what caution or command will be given; and how will the movement proceed?

A.—The battalion commander will give “ADVANCE BY SUCCESSIVE COMPANIES FROM THE FRONT, AT QUARTER (*or WHEELING*) DISTANCE.—No. 1, QUICK MARCH”. The leading company having gained the required distance, the captain of the 2nd company will give it the word “*Quick March*”; and so on in succession to the rear of the column.

Q. 14.—If the opening is to commence from the rear?

A.—The column will be faced about; and the rear company will be the first marched off.

Q. 15.—If a column *on the march* were required to open out as described in the A. to Q. 13?

A.—The battalion commander, having given the caution "ADVANCE BY SUCCESSIVE COMPANIES" &c., would give "REAR COMPANIES, HALT".

Section XXXVII.—A Column, at Close or Quarter distance, Wheeling on a fixed and moveable Pivot.

(F. E., p. 261.)

Q. 1.—What caution is given when a column, at close or quarter distance, is to wheel to its right or left on a *fixed* pivot; and what changes in the column will it effect? L. c.

A.—"COLUMN, LEFT (or RIGHT) WHEEL". On the word "WHEEL," the pivot man of the column will face into the named direction, his rear-rank man uncovering; the covering-serjeant of the leading company will run out; all the companies in rear of the leading one will make a half-face to the wheeling-flank; and, if the wheel is to be to the pivot flank, the lieutenants will move up on the reverse flanks of their companies.

Q. 2.—Which will be the pivot man of the column?

A.—The man on the right or left of the front rank of the leading company, according as the wheel is to be made to the right or left.

Q. 3.—Where will the covering-serjeant of the leading company place himself? c.

A.—He will mark the spot where the outward flank of the column will rest when the wheel is completed.

Q. 4.—If the wheel is to be made to the reverse flank, how will he run out?

A.—By the front.

Q. 5.—What is the object of all the companies in rear of the leading one making a half-face to the wheeling flank?

A.—To prevent crowding on the inward flanks of companies during the wheel ; and to enable the men to circle round more easily into the new direction.

C. Q. 6.—Whether the wheel is to be to the pivot or the reverse flank ; how will the captain of the leading company, and those of the remaining companies, face on the caution ?

A.—The captain of the leading company will stand fast : each of the other captains making the half-face with his company.

Q. 7.—Will the leading company commence wheeling at the command “*QUICK (or DOUBLE) MARCH*” ?

A.—Yes.

Q. 8.—How will it wheel ?

A.—Its length of pace must be short in proportion to the depth of the column ; so as to give the remaining companies time to circle round.

Q. 9.—On what principle will the remaining companies wheel ?

A.—Each man will move round on the circumference of a circle of which the pivot man of the column is the centre : the men nearest the pivot flank of each company keeping their inner shoulder well up at the commencement of the wheel, so as to gain sufficient ground to the flank and to avoid diminishing the distance between companies.

C. Q. 10.—Suppose the wheel is made to the pivot flank, when will the captain of the leading company acquire his new front ?

A.—He will move back during the wheel.

Q. 11.—What is the command given when the column is required to wheel *on the march* ?

A.—The same as the caution given when it is at the halt : “*COLUMN, LEFT (or RIGHT) WHEEL*” .

A COLUMN WHEELING ON A MOVEABLE PIVOT. 121

Q. 12.—Do all the companies in rear make a half turn to the wheeling flank, when the wheel is made on a moveable pivot?

A.—Yes ; on the word “WHEEL”.

Q. 13.—Will the coverer of the leading company run out to give a point? c.

A.—No.

Q. 14.—How will the pivot man of the column act during the wheel?

A.—He will move with a very short pace round the wheeling point, keeping his shoulders square with his company.

Q. 15.—When will the companies which made the half face (or turn) to the wheeling flank, face (or turn) to the front; and the lieutenants, if on the reverse flank, fall back to their places in column ? L.

A.—When the column, having performed the necessary degree of wheel, receives the command “HALT” or “FORWARD”.

Q. 16.—When the former of those words is given, will the men, on halting, correct their dressing?

A.—No : they will face to their proper front and remain steady ; unless the word “DRESS” follows, in which case they will dress by the pivot flank.

Q. 17.—Where, and how, are the majors and adjutant employed during the wheel of the column?

A.—The major of the leading wing will be on the wheeling flank of the leading company, regulating its pace : the other major, in rear of the wheeling flank of the rear company, superintending the covering of the outer files. The adjutant will see that the companies close up to their leading files.

Q. 18.—Which will be the directing flank during the wheel of the column?

A.—Whether the wheel is made on a halted or

122 A COLUMN WHEELING ON A MOVEABLE PIVOT.

moveable pivot, each company will be directed by its outward (or wheeling) flank; which should maintain the same relative position and covering on the leading company, that it held before being put in motion.

C. L. Q. 19.—Who, then, will be responsible for distance and covering during the wheel?

A.—The leaders—captains or lieutenants, as the case may be—on the wheeling flanks.

Q. 20.—On whose movements should the march of every man in the column be made to depend?

A.—On those of the leader of the rear company, who will continue to march at a full pace of 30 inches throughout the wheel.

Q. 21.—Suppose a *double* column is required to wheel?

A.—It will, when closed to quarter or close distance, wheel as a single column.

Q. 22.—Can a close or quarter-distance column taking ground to a *flank in fours* wheel to its right or left?

A.—Yes; by the leading fours of all the companies wheeling round the pivot, as explained in this *Section* for the leading company of a column.

C. L. Q. 23.—Where will the officer leading each company march; and why?

A.—On that flank of its leading four which is nearest the pivot: so that he may be able to keep his distance from that point.

Q. 24.—How does an *open* column change direction?

A.—By the companies wheeling in succession, on moveable pivots, round the same point.

L. Q. 25.—By whom will each company be led during the change of direction, if the wheel is to the reverse flank?

A.—By the lieutenant, who will move up on its reverse flank.

Q. 26.—What rule should be observed by the lieutenants, in order that when "*Forward*" is given the pivot flanks may be in line?

A.—They should be careful to maintain the relative positions held by the reverse flanks when the column was marching by the pivot flank.

Q. 27.—Suppose the companies are of unequal strength?

A.—Weak companies should march a little past the wheeling point before they wheel: strong companies should wheel a little before they come up to it.

Section XXXVIII.—A Column, at Close or Quarter distance, changing front to the rear by the Wheel of Subdivisions round the Centre.

(F. E., p. 264.)

Q. 1.—To whom will the caution "**CHANGE FRONT TO THE REAR BY THE WHEEL OF SUBDIVISIONS ROUND THE CENTRE**", apply, if the change of front is to be effected from the *halt*?

c.

A.—To the coverers of the front and rear companies; who will place themselves, the former in front of the inner file of his reverse subdivision, the latter in rear of the inner file of his pivot subdivision: both facing inwards towards the column.

Q. 2.—Why are those coverers so placed?

A.—In order to afford points at which the subdivisions of each wing will wheel the half circle, and at which the leading subdivisions will be halted when the movement is completed.

124 A COLUMN CHANGING FRONT TO THE REAR.

L. Q. 3.—What command will follow (suppose the column is *right* in front); and whom will it cause to move?

A.—“RIGHT SUBDIVISIONS, RIGHT-ABOUT FACE”; on which the named subdivisions will face about, and the lieutenants place themselves on their outward flanks.

C. L. Q. 4.—The battalion commander having given the word “QUICK MARCH”, will the leading subdivision of each wing be ordered to “Wheel”?

A.—No: all the subdivisions will wheel without any word of command, as they reach the wheeling point of their wing.

Q. 5.—Do the rear subdivisions make a half face (or turn) to the wheeling flank?

A.—No: they retain their proper front during the wheel, the whole preserving their touch to the inward flank.

Q. 6.—Do the subdivisions step short, on completing their half-circle wheel?

A.—No: they move to their front at a full pace.

Q. 7.—What words will next be given; and to whom will they apply?

A.—The words “HALT, FRONT: DRESS”, will be given when the leading subdivision reaches the coverer of the front company; the word “FRONT” applying to the *reverse* subdivisions only.

Q. 8.—Which will be the pivot flank of the column when the movement is completed?

A.—The same as before it commenced; for the order of the companies will not have been changed.

c. Q. 9.—When this movement is performed on the *march*, do the coverers of the front and rear companies give their points on the caution?

A.—No: not until the next word is given.

Q. 10.—What will the next word be; suppose right in front?

A.—“RIGHT SUBDIVISIONS, RIGHT-ABOUT TURN”.

Q. 11.—When will the commanding officer give his word "FRONT TURN"; and will that word be followed by the command "FORWARD"?

A.—He will give his word "FRONT TURN" four paces before the subdivisions of each company arrive in line with each other; so that they may move on together in the new direction. No word "FORWARD" will be given: see p. 19, Q. 58.

Q. 12.—If the column were *left* in front, what word of command would follow the caution to change front?

A.—"LEFT SUBDIVISIONS: RIGHT-ABOUT FACE (*or TURN*)".

Q. 13.—When do the covering-serjeants of the front and rear companies, and the lieutenants, resume their posts in the column? L. c.

A.—On the command "HALT, FRONT: DRESS", or "FRONT TURN," as the case may be.

Q. 14.—Can a *double* column change front to the rear by its subdivisions wheeling round its centre?

A.—Yes; in the same manner as a single column.

Q. 15.—By what other method (besides wheeling round its centre) may a single column change its front?

A.—By countermarching: if at open, half, or quarter distance, by *files*; if at close distance, by *ranks*. The pivot flank of the column, however, will in that case be changed. (See Section XXI.)

Q. 16.—How will the colour party countermarch?

A.—In a column at open, half, or quarter distance, it will countermarch independently, and move across to the rear of the leading centre company: in close column it can only face about, correcting its formation when the column opens out.

Q. 17.—By whose command does the colour-party, on all occasions, move?

A.—By that of the officer carrying the Queen's colour.

*Section XXXIX.—Changing the Order of
a Column by the successive march of the
rear Companies to the Front.*

(F. E., p. 270-273.)

Q. 1.—What caution is given when it is required to change the leading flank of a column?

A.—“**By Successive Companies, Rear Wing to the Front**”.

C. Q. 2.—By which flank of the column will the rear companies move up to the front?

A.—Invariably by the pivot flank.

Q. 3.—When, and by whose command, will the rear company be put in motion?

A.—On the caution ; by command of its captain.

Q. 4.—How will the captain of that company act ; and what commands will he give, suppose *right* is in front?

A.—He will take one pace to his front, face to the right-about, and give the word “*Form fours, left. Quick March*”.

Q. 5.—How will he proceed while his company is moving out of the old column : and what word will he give when it is clear ?

A.—He will stand steady till the company is clear of the column ; he will then give the word “*Front turn. By the right*”, and placing himself on the right flank of his company, will advance with it, passing close by the pivot flanks of the other companies.

Q. 6.—Will he change his flank when he arrives in line with the leading company of the former column?

A.—No : for he will already be on the proper pivot flank of his company.

Q. 7.—When will the next, and each succeeding, company receive the command from its captain to

form fours to the left, and to move out of the old column?

A.—It will get the word "*Form fours, left*" when the flank of the company which it will follow in the new column is approaching; and the word "*Quick March*" as that company passes it.

Q. 8.—Will the covering-serjeant of each company lead it, while it is moving out of the old column? c.

A.—No: he will step short while his company is moving out; and when the lieutenant changes his flank, will take his place.

Q. 9.—When does the lieutenant change his flank? L.

A.—When his captain gives "*Front turn*".

Q. 10.—How does the colour party move out of the old column?

A.—As a company, but in file.

Q. 11.—Which company will it follow in the new column?

A.—The left-centre company: seeing that left will now be in front.

Q. 12.—May a column formed at quarter distance change its leading flank in the manner above described?

A.—Yes.

Q. 13.—At what distance will the companies be, when in (the new) column?

A.—At whatever distance the old column was formed, they will necessarily be at wheeling distance.

Q. 14.—How is the leading flank of a column changed *on a road*, where the space will not admit of the flank movement above described?

A.—By the companies moving in succession from the rear to the front in *fours*: the pivot section of each (except the rear) company being wheeled up, to give room.

C. Q. 15.—What caution is given to effect the change of front in that manner; and to whom will it apply?

A.—“By FOURS FROM THE LEFT (or, if the column is left in front, FROM THE RIGHT), REAR WING TO THE FRONT” : on which the captain of the rear company will instantly give it the words “*Form fours, left, Right wheel*” or “*Form fours, right, Left wheel*” according as right or left is in front.

Q. 16.—By whose command will the pivot section of each of the remaining companies wheel up?

A.—By that of the battalion commander; who, after giving the caution “*By fours, &c.*”, will give the command “*FOURTH (or FIRST) SECTIONS, RIGHT (or LEFT) WHEEL. QUICK MARCH*”.

C. Q. 17. How will the captain of each of those companies proceed, on the word “*QUICK MARCH*”?

A.—He will wheel inwards with his pivot section; giving it the word “*Halt*” as it completes the quarter circle.

Q. 18.—When will the rear company advance?

A.—It will advance, without any further word of command from its captain, when the pivot sections of the remaining companies get the word “*QUICK MARCH*”.

Q. 19.—How will it move?

A.—It will wheel in the named direction; and move straight to the front, along the rear ranks of the pivot sections of the remaining companies.

C. Q. 20.—By whom, and when, will each succeeding company be ordered to advance?

A.—By its captain: who will glance over his inward shoulder, and give “*Form fours, left. Quick March*” in time to follow the company which will precede him in column, without losing distance.

C.L.E. Q. 21.—Where do the captains, supernumeraries, &c. and covering-serjeants march, while the companies are

advancing along the rear ranks of the pivot sections of the remaining companies?

A.—In their usual places in fours.

Q. 22.—When, and by whose command, will each company be re-formed? C.

A.—When it has cleared the former front of the column: by command of the captain, who will give "*Front form company.—Forward*".

Q. 23.—How will the captain, coverer, and super- C.L.E.
numeraries then proceed? C.

A.—As directed in *Section XX.*, Q. 1.

Q. 24.—When will the company which was the leading one of the old column, be ordered to front form company?

A.—As soon as its leading four has gained the left (or right) of the road.

Q. 25.—Will the companies *invariably* be re-formed as each in succession clears the former front of the column?

A.—They may, if required, move on in fours.

Q. 26.—How will the colour party act in this change of the leading flank of the column, if *right* was in front?

A.—On the battalion commander's word "*Quick MARCH*" they will move to the rear of the 3rd section of the right-centre company; and will follow in rear of the left-centre company when it passes them.

Q. 27.—If the old column was *left* in front?

A.—They will move to the rear of the 2nd section of the left-centre company; and will follow in rear of the right-centre company.

Q. 28.—Where will the mounted officers and serjeant-major march, during the movement?

A.—The former will move onward with the companies on the reverse flanks of which they are sta-

tioned; so as to be on the new reverse flank when the change of wings is effected: the latter will march on the outer flank of the rear-rank centre serjeant.

Q. 29.—Does it signify at what distance a column is formed, when its leading flank is to be changed in the manner last described?

A.—It may be formed at any, except close, distance.

Q. 30.—In changing the leading flank of a column on a road, will the rear wing always be brought to the front by *fours*?

A.—It may, if required, be brought up by *sections*; but in that case it will be necessary for the pivot subdivisions, instead of the pivot sections, to wheel up.

Section XL.—A Column taking ground to a Flank.

(F. E., pp. 273–276.)

Q. 1.—In how many ways does a column take ground to a flank?

A.—In three: viz. by the flank march of companies in fours; by the echelon march of sections; and by the diagonal march.

Q. 2.—When are the two last-mentioned methods employed?

A.—When it is required to take ground at once to the front and to a flank.

Q. 3.—Is each of the three applicable, at whatever distance the column may be formed?

A.—No: a *close* column can only take ground to a flank by fours, or by the diagonal march; the distance

between companies not admitting of the echelon march of sections.

Q. 4.—Does the pivot flank of a column continue the flank of direction, whether the column takes ground to that or to the reverse flank?

A.—No: the flank to which the column takes ground, will direct for the time being.

Q. 5.—When a caution, then, is given to a column C. c. to take ground to the reverse flank, do captains and their covering-serjeants change to that flank?

A.—No: unless the battalion commander gives the word "OFFICERS CHANGE YOUR FLANKS", the captain of each company remains on its proper pivot flank; the lieutenant moving up to lead.

Q. 6.—Will the command "CHANGE YOUR FLANKS", L. if given, apply to the lieutenants and to the colour party?

A.—Yes.

Q. 7.—What caution and command will be given, when a column on the march is to take ground to a flank by *fours*?

A.—"TAKE GROUND TO THE RIGHT (or LEFT) IN FOURES. FORM FOURES, RIGHT (or LEFT)".

Q. 8.—When a column is taking ground to a flank C. L. by fours, on which flank of each company does its leader (captain or lieutenant, as the case may be) march?

A.—On that flank of his leading four which is nearest to the company of direction.

Q. 9.—If the column is a *close* one?

A.—The leader of each company, except that which is at the head of the column, will march at the head of its front rank.

Q. 10.—The coverer, and supernumeraries?

A.—The coverer, if on the leading flank, will march

C.

at the head of the 2nd rank; if not, will remain in his usual place in column. The supernumeraries will march between the fours.

Q. 11.—Can an open, half, or quarter-distance column *taking ground to a flank in fours*, be closed to less distance?

A.—Yes: by the named company stepping short while the remainder wheel their leading fours the eighth of a circle towards it; and each of the remainder in succession changing its direction parallel to that of the named company, and moving with a short pace till the battalion commander gives "FORWARD" to the whole column.

C. L. Q. 12.—What rule will be observed by company leaders, in such a case?

A.—They will, if not already there, change to that flank of their leading four which is nearest to the named company.

Q. 13.—Is there any other method by which the closing may be effected?

A.—Yes; on open ground the companies may close, and open out, by the diagonal march.

c. Q. 14.—When an open column is *moving into an alignment* by the flank march of fours, by whom will the distance and covering for each company in succession be taken up?

A.—By its own coverer, who will run out to mark where its pivot flank will rest in the alignment.

Q. 15.—How will the coverer of the leading company take his distance; and by whom will all the coverers be covered?

A.—The coverer of the leading company will take his distance from the point on which the column originally marched. The major of the leading wing will cover the coverers from the front.

Q. 16.—May companies in column move to a flank in *file*?

A.—That formation is never used, unless it is necessary to pass through very narrow places.

Q. 17.—When a halted column is required to take ground to a flank in *echelon of sections*, what caution will be given, and how will each company move?

A.—The caution will be "TAKE GROUND TO THE RIGHT (or LEFT) IN ECHELON. ON THE MOVE, BY SECTIONS, RIGHT (or LEFT) WHEEL": on which each company will move as explained in *Section XV*.

Q. 18.—Who will lead the column when it takes C. L. ground to a flank in echelon of sections?

A.—The captain or the lieutenant of the leading company, according as ground is being taken to the pivot or to the reverse flank.

Q. 19.—What will be his duty when, the sections having wheeled into echelon, the column receives the word "FORWARD"?

A.—To select points in the diagonal direction; and to march correctly on them.

Q. 20.—To what should the attention of the leaders of the remaining companies be directed, during the march in echelon?

A.—They should keep their covering on the leading flank of the leading company, and preserve their distance from the companies that are next in front of them when in column.

Q. 21.—When sufficient ground has been gained to the flank, what command will be given in order that the column may resume its march to the front?

A.—"RE-FORM COLUMN": and, when the sections have wheeled back into the line of their companies, "FORWARD".

Q. 22.—If ground has been taken to the reverse flank, when will the lieutenant of each company fall back to his post in column?

A.—On the word "FORWARD".

L.

184 A LINE WHEELING BACK INTO OPEN COLUMN.

Q. 23.—How will the colour party move, when a column takes ground to a flank in echelon of sections?

A.—They will wheel up parallel to, and march in rear of, the section which precedes them in column.

Q. 24.—When a column on the move is to take ground to the front and a flank by the *diagonal march*, what word will be given?

A.—“TAKE GROUND TO THE RIGHT (or LEFT) BY THE DIAGONAL MARCH. RIGHT (or LEFT) HALF TURN”.

C.I.E. Q. 25.—How will each company, and its officers, &c., move?

A.—As directed in *Section IV.*, Q. 42-46.

Section XLI.—A Battalion in Line wheeling into Open Column.

(F. E., pp. 277-279.)

Q. 1.—How does a battalion in line wheel, on halted pivots, into open column?

A.—The companies will be faced about, and then wheeled rear rank in front; as described in *Section VII.*

C. c. Q. 2.—On the caution “OPEN COLUMN RIGHT IN FRONT”, suppose right is to be in front, will the directions given in that *Section* apply to the captain, covering-serjeant, and pivot man of each company?

A.—They will apply to the captain and pivot man of each company, and to the covering-serjeant of the *right-flank* company. The other covering-serjeants will stand fast.

L. Q. 3.—Who else will move on the caution?

A.—The senior major will move up to the right,

the junior major to the left, of the line : and the officer on the left of the line, and his coverer, will fall into the supernumerary rank.

Q. 4.—What is the rule about the officer on the left of the line, and his coverer, falling back into the supernumerary rank?

A.—They do so, on the caution, in all formations from line.

Q. 5.—On the word “RIGHT-ABOUT-FACE”, will the whole, except the pivot man of each company and the coverer of the right-flank company, face about?

A.—No ; the senior major will stand fast; and the colour party face to the right, and disengage to the rear. The remainder (including band, drummers, and pioneers) will face about; the junior major and adjutant turning their horses' heads to the rear.

Q. 6.—On the word “RIGHT WHEEL: QUICK C.L.E. MARCH”, how will the formation proceed?

A.—Each company will move as explained in *Section VII.* (Q.18-23). The colour party will wheel in file to the right, and be halted and fronted in its proper place in rear of the right-centre company ; and the band, drummers, pioneers, and mounted officers (except the senior major) will move to their places in column. See p. 92, Q. 24.

Q. 7.—When will the senior major take post in column?

A.—After he has corrected the covering of the captains from the head of the column.

Q. 8.—Where do the coverers of all the companies except No. 1, march during the wheel ; and when will they take their places in column?

c.

A.—During the wheel they march on the proper right of the proper rear rank of their companies ; moving to their places in column on their captains' word “*Halt, front, dress*”.

136 A LINE WHEELING BACK INTO OPEN COLUMN.

Q. 9.—When will the covering-serjeant of No. 1 company take post in column?

A.—Like the rest, on his captain's word "*Halt, front, dress*".

Q. 10.—How is an open column *left* in front formed from line?

A.—On exactly the same principle as when right is to be in front; the companies, after being faced about, will wheel to the left, and the junior major will correct the captains' covering from that flank.

Q. 11.—On the word "RIGHT-ABOUT-FACE", how will the colour party face?

A.—To the left.

c. Q. 12.—Will the covering-serjeant of the left-flank (the future leading) company run out, on the caution, to mark where its left flank will rest in column?

A.—Yes.

Q. 13.—Will the remaining coverers be on the right, or on the left, of their company during the wheel into column?

A.—On the proper right, aligned with the proper rear rank; as in wheeling into column right in front.

C. Q. 14.—Suppose a battalion in line, halted, is required to wheel back into open column of *subdivisions* or *sections*: what caution will be given, and how will the captain and pivot file of each company proceed?

A.—The caution will be "BY SUBDIVISIONS (or SECTIONS), ON THE LEFT (or RIGHT) BACKWARD WHEEL"; or, if the subdivisions (or sections) exceed twelve files, "OPEN COLUMN OF SUBDIVISIONS (or SECTIONS), RIGHT (or LEFT) IN FRONT". The captains and pivot files will move precisely as explained in *Section XI*.

c. Q. 15.—How will the covering-serjeants act on the caution?

A.—The coverer of the company that will be the front company of the column will act as directed for

the coverer in the *Section* (XI.) above referred to ; the remaining coverers will stand fast.

Q. 16.—Who will dress the pivots, and the subdivision (or section) leaders ?

A.—The senior or the junior major, according as the column is to be right or left in front. (Q. 3, 10.)

Q. 17.—Suppose the subdivisions (or sections) are *not* to face-about before wheeling : how, and when, will the colour party, band, drummers, and pioneers, face ?

A.—They will face as in the wheel into column by companies (Q. 5, 11) ; but *on the caution*.

Q. 18.—How will the mounted officers, colours, and band, move to their places ?

A.—Precisely as in the formation of a column of companies.

Q. 19.—When a battalion advancing or retiring in C.L.E. line, is wheeled forward into column of companies, subdivisions, or sections : how will each company, and its officers, move ?

A.—As explained in *Sections VII. and XI.*

Q. 20.—How will the colour party act ?

A.—It will wheel independently ; and move, by the shortest line, to its place in column.

Q. 21.—When will the mounted officers, band, drummers, and pioneers, move to their places in column ?

A.—During the wheel.

Q. 22.—May a battalion be wheeled from line into column “on moveable pivots from the halt” ?

A.—Yes ; the caution commencing with “*ON THE MOVE*”. (See p. 28, Q. 32.)

Section XLII.—A Battalion in Line moving in Open Column from either Flank along the Rear.

(F. E., p. 279.)

Q. 1.—What caution will be given when a battalion formed in line is to move in open column, say from the *right*, along the rear.

A.—“THE BATTALION WILL MOVE IN COLUMN OF COMPANIES (SUBDIVISIONS, or SECTIONS) FROM THE RIGHT ALONG THE REAR”.

C. L. Q. 2.—Who will move, on that caution?

A.—All the captains change their flanks; and the officer on the left of the line falls into the supernumerary rank, which will close up 2 paces.

Q. 3.—What is the rule respecting the supernumerary rank closing up?

A.—It will invariably close up 2 paces, on the caution, when the movement is to be along the rear of the line.

C. Q. 4.—Suppose the movement is to be by *companies*:—what command will be given, and when?

A.—The captain on the right-flank company, as he is changing flank, gives it the words “*Form fours, left. Left wheel: Quick March*”.

Q. 5.—Will the other captains in changing their flank be accompanied, as usual, by their coverers?

A.—Yes.

Q. 6.—Will they, after changing, move up as usual on the flank to which they have changed?

A.—No: the *coverers* will move up on the left of the front rank of their company; the captains will remain in rear.

Q. 7.—Why?

A.—In order that the captains may be better able to see when the company which they are to follow

is approaching: and the coverers be in their proper places when their company forms fours.

Q. 8.—Will the lieutenants change flanks when the L. captains change?

A.—Yes; according to the general rule.

Q. 9.—Where will the captain and coverer of No. 1 place themselves, when the former gives his word "Form fours, left"; and how will they move out to the rear of the line?

A.—The captain will place himself, as usual, on the pivot flank of his leading four; the coverer at the head of the front rank. The captain will then move out with his company till he is clear of the super-numerary rank of the line, when he will halt till the rear four reaches him: the coverer will continue at the head of the front rank.

Q. 10.—When will each succeeding company be commanded to form fours left, and to move out of the line?

A.—It will get the word "Form fours, left" when the company which is to precede it in column receives the command "Front turn"; and will get "Quick March" the moment that company passes it.

Q. 11.—When will each company get "Front turn"?

A.—When its rear four reaches the captain.

Q. 12.—Where will the captain and covering-serjeant of each company place themselves, when the former gives the word "Front turn"?

A.—The captain on the right flank of the company; the coverer in rear of the 2nd file from that flank.

Q. 13.—That being the reverse flank in column, will they change to the pivot flank when they clear the line?

A.—Not until, all the companies being in column, the battalion commander gives the word "OFFICERS CHANGE FLANKS".

L. E. Q. 14.—How do the supernumeraries act in this movement?

A.—They face, and wheel into column, with those files which they covered in line; the lieutenant changing his flank on his captain's word "*Front turn*".

Q. 15.—How do the colours move?

A.—Precisely as a company, but in file.

Q. 16.—When will they receive the word "*Front turn*"?

A.—When they have cleared the supernumerary rank of the line; so as to follow in rear of the usual files from the right flank of the right-centre company.

Q. 17.—When will they change to the rear of the proper pivot flank of that company?

A.—When "OFFICERS CHANGE FLANKS" is given, they will get the command "*Left half turn, Double*", and on reaching their proper post, "*Front turn, Quick*". See p. 125, Q. 17.

Q. 18. Where will the field officers, and the serjeant-major, march?

A.—The former march on the proper pivot flanks of the companies they cover in line; until "OFFICERS CHANGE FLANKS" is given, when they change to the reverse flanks. The latter marches in the rear of the centre serjeants.

C. Q. 19.—How is this movement performed, when it commences from the *left* of the battalion?

A.—In the same manner as when it commences from the right; each captain in succession giving his company the commands "*Form fours, right, Right wheel: Quick March*", and "*Front turn*".

c. Q. 20.—How will the captains and coverers move on the caution?

A.—They will fall to the rear; their coverers replacing them on the right of the front rank.

ADVANCING IN OPEN COLUMN FROM A FLANK. 141

Q. 21.—On which flanks will the captains march, C.
when in column?

A.—On the *left*; until ordered to change flanks.

Q. 22.—When a battalion is to move from either flank along the rear in open column of *subdivisions* or *sections*, where will the captains place themselves on the caution?

A.—In rear of the inner flank of whichever subdivision or section will be in front, and which consequently they will lead, when in column.

Q. 23.—By whom will the words "*Form fours, left* L.E. (*or right*), *Left* (*or right*) *wheel* : *Quick March*", and "*Front turn*", be given to the rear subdivision (or each of the rear sections) of each company?

A.—By its own leader.

Section XLIII.—A Battalion in Line advancing from a Flank in Open Column of Companies (Subdivisions, or Sections).

(F. E., p. 281.)

Q. 1.—When a battalion halted in line is to advance in open column, say of *companies*, from a flank, what caution is given?

A.—"RIGHT (*or LEFT*) COMPANY TO THE FRONT : REMAINING COMPANIES, ON THE MOVE, RIGHT (*or LEFT*) WHEEL".

Q. 2.—Whom will that caution cause to move? C. L.

A.—The officer on the left of the line will fall back c. into the supernumerary rank : and if the advance is to be from the *right*, the captain, covering-serjeant, and

142 ADVANCING IN OPEN COLUMN FROM A FLANK.

lieutenant of the right-flank company will change their flank, the captain and coverer of No. 2 falling a pace to the rear.

Q. 3.—What is the next word : and by whom given ?
A.—“QUICK MARCH” ; by the battalion commander.

C. Q. 4.—On that word, how does the flank company which will be at the head of the column step off?

A.—It advances at a short pace, until its captain gives the word “Forward”.

Q. 5.—That word being given, when ?

A.—At such a period of the next company’s 2nd wheel as will prevent distance being lost between the two.

Q. 6.—What command is given when the remaining companies have completed the 1st wheel (into column) ?

A.—“FORWARD” : by the battalion commander.

C. Q. 7.—When, and from whom, will the second company get the command to make its 2nd wheel, which will bring it in rear of the leading company ?

A.—From its captain, on the word “FORWARD”.

Q. 8.—The remaining companies ?

A.—Will wheel, in succession, by command of their respective captains, on reaching the ground where the second company wheeled.

C. Q. 9.—When the advance is from the right flank, when, and how, do the captain and coverer of each (except the leading) company change flanks ?

A.—During the 1st wheel : the coverer passing by the rear, the captain by the front. See p. 28, Q. 28.

Q. 10.—If the advance is from the left ?

A.—The captains will remain in their places, and wheel with their companies ; the coverers fall-

ing back to their places in column on the word
“**MARCH**”.*

Q. 11.—If the advance is from the right, when does
the lieutenant of each (except the right) company
change his flank? L.

A.—During the wheel of his company into column.*

Q. 12.—How do the colours move?

A.—They wheel as a company till they have com-
pleted the quarter circle, when they will receive the
word “*Left half turn*” if the advance is from the right,
“*Right half turn*” if from the left: they then move on
diagonally until, on reaching their post in column, they
get “*Front turn*”.

Q. 13.—May a battalion in line advance in column
of subdivisions, or sections, from a flank?

A.—Yes: on precisely the same principle as in
column of companies.

Q. 14.—How will the subdivision (or section) leaders, C.L.E.
and the covering-serjeants, proceed? c.

A.—The captain and coverer of the company in
which is the named subdivision (or section), which will
lead the column, will move as directed in *Section XIV*.
The remaining leaders and covering-serjeants will get
into their places in column as explained in *Sec. XI*.
(Q. 18–21); and, in succession, proceed as directed in
Sec. XVI. (Q. 10).

Q. 15.—Where do the mounted officers march, in
these movements?

A.—In their proper places in open column.

* See p. 28, Q. 28, 30, 31.

Section XLIV.—A Battalion in Line advancing in Double Column of Companies (Subdivisions, or Sections).

(F. E., p. 282.)

Q. 1.—When a battalion in line is to advance in double column, from which part of the line will the advance necessarily be made?

A.—From the centre.

C. L. Q. 2.—Suppose the double column is to be one of subdivisions : what caution will be given by the battalion commander, and to what officers will it apply?

A.—“TWO CENTRE SUBDIVISIONS TO THE FRONT. REMAINING SUBDIVISIONS, ON THE MOVE, INWARDS WHEEL.” On that caution the captain of the right-centre company will move out one pace in front of the left-hand man of his right subdivision ; the captain of the left-centre company one pace in front of the right-hand man of his left subdivision ; the officer on the left of the line will fall back into the supernumerary rank ; and the officers carrying the colours will step back 2 paces.

E. C. Q. 3.—To whom will the caution also apply?

A.—To the supernumerary rank, which will close up 2 paces ; to the remainder of the colour party, which will step back 2 paces : and to the coverers of the two flank companies, who will give points for the 2nd wheels.

C. Q. 4.—Where, and how, will the coverers of the two flank companies give their points?

A.—In front of the outer flanks of the two centre subdivisions ; at subdivision distance from, and facing towards, the line. The coverer of No. 1 will make allowance for the inclination of the right-centre subdivision (*see Q. 7*).

Q. 5.—What command will follow?

A.—“QUICK MARCH”, from the battalion commander.

Q. 6.—On that word, how will the two centre subdivisions advance ? C.

A.—They will advance at a short pace until the two following subdivisions, on the battalion commander's word "FORWARD", commence their 2nd wheel. The captain of the left-centre company will then give "*Forward, by the left,*" on which both the leading subdivisions will step off at the regular pace of 30 inches.

Q. 7.—The colour party having fallen to the rear, and the left-centre captain vacated his place, will there not be an interval between the two leading subdivisions ?

A.—Yes ; to fill which, the left subdivision of the right-centre company, while stepping short, will incline to the other leading subdivision.

Q. 8.—Why is the word "*Forward*" given by the captain leading the *left*-centre subdivision ; and why does not that subdivision close to the other centre subdivision, instead of the *latter* closing ?

A.—Because the *proper left*, unless it is otherwise ordered, is the directing flank in all double columns ; and the officers on that flank command the subdivision (company, or section) aligned with them in the double column, as well as their own.

Q. 9.—How will the movement proceed ?

A.—Each wing of the battalion will move as in advancing in open column of subdivisions from a flank : the left-wing subdivision leaders observing the rule given in the last Answer.

Q. 10.—Where will the officers of each company C.L.E. march in the double column ?

A.—In their usual places : i.e., the captain on the pivot flank of its leading subdivision ; the lieutenant on the pivot flank, the ensign in rear of the 2nd file from the reverse flank, of the rear subdivision.

Q. 11.—When, and how, do they move to those places?

A.—As directed in *Section XI.*, Q. 17-21.

Q. 12.—The mounted officers, and colours?

A.—The junior major will march in rear of the pivot flank of the 2nd subdivision from the front of the left wing, superintending the direction: the senior major and adjutant, having superintended the 2nd wheels of all the subdivisions, will follow in rear of the column. The colour party will be one pace in rear of the centre of the two leading subdivisions.

Q. 13.—The serjeant-major, and band?

A.—The band will be in rear of the column; the serjeant-major in rear of the colour party.

C. Q. 14.—When the advance is to be in double column of *companies*, which of the captains will change flanks on the caution?

A.—The captain of the left-centre company only.

Q. 15.—On which flank of his company will each captain march; and when, and how, will he get there?

A.—On the outward flank; the captain of each right-wing (except the right-centre) company wheeling with it on the word “*QUICK MARCH*”; the captain of each left-wing (except the left-centre) company moving across by the front during the 1st wheel. *See Section VII.*, Q. 28-31.

C.L.E. Q. 16.—Suppose the double column is to be formed of *sections*, where will the leader of each section (except the two centre sections) get to his place in column?

A.—He will move precisely as directed in *Section XI.*, Q. 17-21.

c. Q. 17.—In the advance by double column of companies, or sections, where are the wheeling points given?

A.—In front of the outer flanks of the two centre companies, or sections; at company, or section, distance from the line.

Q. 18.—When do the coverers giving the points, in each case, move off in their places in column?

A.—When their own companies (or their outer subdivisions, or sections) have completed their 2nd wheel.

Section XLV.—A Battalion in Line retiring in Open Column from a Flank.

(F. E., p. 287.)

Q. 1.—When a battalion in line is to retire in open column from a flank, what will be the battalion commander's caution?

A.—“RETIRE BY COMPANIES (SUBDIVISIONS, or SECTIONS) FROM THE LEFT IN REAR OF THE RIGHT”, or “FROM THE RIGHT IN REAR OF THE LEFT”, according as the defile (*see Q. 23*) is in rear of the right or left flank of the line.

Q. 2.—Suppose the retreat is to be from the left in C.L.E. rear of the right, and by *companies*; who will move on c. the caution?

A.—All the captains will fall to the rear; and the officer on the left of the line fall back into the supernumerary rank, which will close up 2 paces. The coverer of No. 1 company will fall back and give a point in rear of the captain of No. 2, at a distance equal to the breadth of a company and three paces; and the remaining coverers take post in rear of the 2nd file from the right of their companies.

Q. 3.—Why is a point given in rear of No. 2?

A.—That on it the several companies may make their 2nd wheel.

148 RETIRING IN OPEN COLUMN FROM A FLANK.

c. Q. 4.—How does the coverer face in giving it?
A.—Towards the line.

L. E. Q. 5.—Does the supernumerary rank always take two paces to the front, when the movement is to be along the rear of the line?
A.—Yes.

C. Q. 6.—What will be the duty of the captain of the company on that flank (supposed to be the *left*) whence the retreat is to commence?
A.—To give his company the command "*Right-about face. Quick March*": as it is taking the 3rd pace to the rear, "*Left wheel*": and when it has wheeled the quarter circle, "*Forward*".

Q. 7.—When will each succeeding (except the right-flank) company be faced about by its captain?
A.—In time for it to step off when the company that has moved from its proper left is within *three* paces of its proper right flank.

Q. 8.—When will each of those succeeding companies be ordered to wheel to its left?
A.—As it is taking the 3rd pace to the rear of the line.

Q. 9.—While each company is passing along the rear of the line, on which flank does its captain march?
A.—On that which is next the line.

Q. 10.—That being his reverse flank in the column, when will he change to his pivot flank; and what words of command will he give?
A.—Having reached the left flank of No. 1 company (in rear of which the column is to retire), he will give his own company "*Right wheel*" and change his flank: on the completion of that wheel, he will give "*Forward, by the right*".

c. Q. 11.—Where will each covering-serjeant march?
A.—In the proper rear of the 2nd file from that

flank of his company on which the captain is marching, till the company commences its 2nd wheel; he will then move in the proper rear of the 2nd file from the flank to which the captain changes.

Q. 12.—When will the captain of No. 1 give his words "*Right-about face*", and "*Quick March*"? C.

A.—He will give the former word when No. 2 is commencing its 2nd wheel; the latter, three paces before the wheel is completed.

Q. 13.—When, and how, will he change his flank?

A.—Just before giving the word "*Right-about face*"; by the rear, as usual.

Q. 14.—How will the colour party move?

A.—Independently, as a company, following the left-centre company; and, after completing its 2nd wheel, will get to its place in the proper rear of the right-centre company, by moving up to the wheeling point and marking time.

Q. 15.—If the retreat is to commence from the right, how will the captains act, on the caution? C:

A.—They will all, except the captain of the left-flank company, change flanks, remaining in rear of the line. The captain of the left-flank company will fall to the rear.

Q. 16.—The covering-serjeants?

A.—The coverer of the left-flank company will take post in rear of the 2nd file from its right; the remainder, in rear of the 2nd file from the left of their respective companies. c.

Q. 17.—When the retreat is to be by *subdivisions* or *C.L.E. sections*, by whose command will each subdivision (or section) face about, march off, and wheel?

A.—It will face about, and march off, by command of the captain: its proper leader will then take command of it, and give all the necessary words.

C. Q. 18.—Which subdivision, or section, of each company will invariably be led by the *captain*; and why?

A.—That which steps off last; so that when the column is halted and fronted, or turned to its front, he may be at the head of his company.

Q. 19.—In this movement, will not each company (or subdivision) acquire more than its proper distance?

A.—Yes; if each wheels correctly, it will, when the column is formed, have *one-half* more than its proper distance: this distance must be corrected either by the leading company (or subdivisions) stepping short or marking time until the others close to wheeling distance; or by the leading company (or subdivisions) moving forward in quick time, and the remainder closing at the double; as the commander of the battalion may direct.

Q. 20.—Should it be impracticable to *wheel* the companies or subdivisions, how may the retreat be effected?

A.—By each company (or subdivision), in succession, facing, or forming fours, in the required direction; and moving along the rear of the line until opposite the defile, when its leader will give "*Rear turn*".

C. L. Q. 21.—Will each leader continue marching with his leading file (or four), until it is necessary to give the word "*Rear turn*"?

A.—No: on reaching the inward flank of the company (or subdivision) in rear of which he is to retire, he will halt and allow his company (or subdivision) to move on until its rear file, or four, reaches him, and will then give "*Rear turn*".

c. Q. 22.—Where will the covering-serjeant place himself at that word?

A.—In the *proper* rear of the 2nd file from the flank on which his captain is marching.

Q. 23.—To what purpose is the movement described in this *Section*, applied?

A.—To retiring over a bridge, or through a defile.

Section XLVI.—A Battalion in Line retiring in Double Column from both Flanks in rear of the Centre.

(F. E., p. 291.)

Q. 1.—When a battalion in line is to retire from both flanks, in rear of the centre, say by subdivisions, what caution is given?

A.—“**R**ETIRE BY SUBDIVISIONS FROM BOTH FLANKS IN REAR OF THE CENTRE.”

Q. 2.—Who will move on that caution?

A.—The officer on the left of the line will fall back into the supernumerary rank, which will close up 2 paces: all the right-wing captains, (except the captain of the right-centre company) change flanks, the lieutenants making a corresponding change: and the coverers of the two centre companies fall back, and give the points for the remaining subdivisions to wheel on.

C. L.
c.

Q. 3.—Where do those coverers give their points; and how facing?

A.—At subdivision distance and three paces in rear of the 2nd files from the outward flanks of the two centre subdivisions: facing towards the line.

c.

Q. 4.—What follows?

A.—The two flank subdivisions of the line receive from their respective captains “*Right-about face. Quick March*”.

C.

Q. 5.—Do those subdivisions also get the word to **wheel**, from their captains?

L.

A.—No: as they are taking the 3rd pace to the rear, they receive the word "*Right* (or *Left*) *wheel*"; and when they have wheeled the quarter circle, "*Forward*"; from their proper leaders, as in the retreat from one flank in rear of the other.

C. Q. 6.—The captains, then, will not move to the rear with those subdivisions of their companies which lead while retiring?

A.—No: for the reason given in Sec. XLV., Q. 18.

Q. 7.—When will each of the succeeding subdivisions be faced to the right-about in order to retire?

A.—In time for it to step off when that subdivision which it is to follow is within 3 paces of its inward flank.

C. L. Q. 8.—While each subdivision is moving along the rear of the line, on which flank will its leader march?

A.—On its inward flank: as in the retreat from one flank in rear of the other. (*See last Section.*)

Q. 9.—When will he change to the outward flank?

A.—While the subdivision is making its 2nd wheel.

Q. 10.—When will the two centre subdivisions be faced to the right-about?

A.—When the subdivisions which will precede them in the double column commence their 2nd wheel.

C. Q. 11.—Will each of those subdivisions receive the necessary commands from its own leader?

A.—No: the commands "*Right-about face*.—*Quick March*", given by the captain of the left-centre company, will apply to both subdivisions. (*See Q. 15.*)

Q. 12.—When will the captain of the left-centre company give his word "*March*"?

A.—When the outward subdivisions of the two centre companies are 3 paces from the completion of their 2nd wheel.

Q. 13.—How will the colour party move?

A.—It will face about with the two centre subdivisions, and then take 3 paces to its new front; stepping off when those subdivisions get the word "*March*".

Q. 14.—How will the interval which the colour party and left-centre captain have left between the two centre subdivisions, be filled up?

A.—By the two centre subdivisions inclining to each other as they move off.

Q. 15.—Which will be the directing flank of the column while retiring; and who will give the word "*Forward*" at the completion of the 2nd wheels? C. L.

A.—The present right will be the directing flank: the word "*Forward*" being, therefore, given by the proper left-wing leaders. (*See p. 145, Q. 8.*)

Q. 16.—When will the coverers of the two centre companies march off in their places in the double column?

c.

A.—They will face about so as to step off on the left-centre captain's word "*March*".

Q. 17.—Where will the mounted officers march?

A.—The junior major will superintend the direction as in open column: the senior major and adjutant will superintend the wheels of all the subdivisions, and then follow in rear of the column.

Q. 18.—Should the ground not admit of the subdivisions *wheeling*, how may the retreat be effected? C. L.

A.—By the subdivisions facing (or forming fours) inwards, and moving in succession along the rear of the line until they meet in rear of the two centre subdivisions; when they will receive from the respective leaders the word "*Rear turn*".

Q. 19.—Will the leaders of the subdivisions move on with them until they meet in rear of the centre?

A.—No: on reaching the outward flanks of the two centre subdivisions, they will halt till their rear file

(or four) reaches them; when they will give "*Rear turn*" and move off on the outward flanks of their subdivisions; the proper left-wing leaders giving "*By the present right*".

Q. 20.—Will there not be a loss of distance between the subdivisions?

A.—Yes; which will be corrected as already explained. (*See p. 150, Q. 19.*)

Section XLVII.—A Battalion in Line forming Open, Quarter-distance, or Close Column on any named Company.

(F. E., p. 293.)

C. L. Q. 1.—What is the rule respecting the captains and lieutenants, when the caution to form column is given?

A.—The captain of the named company, if not already on what will be its pivot flank in column, will change to that flank. The remaining captains, if not already there, will change to that flank of their company which will lead when moving into column. The lieutenants change, as usual, with their captains.

Q. 2.—What caution will be given when column is to be formed from line on either flank company: suppose the *right*?

A.—“OPEN (QUARTER-DISTANCE, or CLOSE) COLUMN IN REAR (or FRONT) OF NO. 1”.

Q. 3.—Who (besides the captain and lieutenant of the named company) will move on the caution: suppose *right* is to be in front?

A.—The coverer of the named company, who moves out to the front; the captain and coverer of No. 2, who

take a pace to the rear ; the senior major and the serjeant-major ; the officer on the left of the line ; and the whole of the supernumerary rank.

Q. 4.—Where will the coverer of the named company place himself : and why ? c.

A.—Passing by the *front*, he will place himself (with his rifle at the ‘recover’) 6 paces in front of his captain ; whom, and the distant point, he will face and cover : thus giving the necessary base point for the formation of the column.

Q. 5.—If the caution were to form column in *rear* of No. 1 ; would the coverer of the named company proceed as when right is to be in front ?

A.—No : the base point would be given, not by the coverer, but by the senior supernumerary serjeant, who would place himself 6 paces in *rear* of the captain.

Q. 6.—How do the supernumerary rank, and the L. E. officer on the left of the line, in each case, proceed on the caution ?

A.—The former closes up 2 paces : the latter falls back into it.

Q. 7.—The serjeant-major, and the senior major ?

A.—The former will move to the ground on which the reverse flank of the column is to rest, ready to superintend the parallel dressing of each company as it arrives in column : the latter will place himself in front or rear of the base point, according as right or left is to be in front, ready to superintend the covering of the coverers and captains.

Q. 8.—Suppose the column is to be formed on the *left-flank* company, by whom will the base point be given ? c.

A.—If *right* is to be in front, by the senior supernumerary serjeant of that company, in rear of the captain : if *left* is to be in front, by its coverer, in front of the captain.

Q. 9.—Where will the serjeant-major place himself; and by whom will the covering of the captains and coverers be superintended?

A.—The serjeant-major will place himself as explained above (Q. 7); and the junior major will superintend the covering.

c. Q. 10.—Suppose the formation is to be on a *central* company; what caution will be given, and how will the coverer of the named company proceed?

A.—The caution will be “OPEN (CLOSE, or QUARTER-DISTANCE) COLUMN, RIGHT (or LEFT) IN FRONT, ON NO. —”: on which the covering-serjeant of the named company will mark the future pivot flank of that company which is to form next in front of his own in the column.

Q. 11.—How will he face, in giving that point?

A.—He will first cover on his captain (who, if right is to be in front, will have changed his flank), placing himself square with the line; and will then face about to the front.

Q. 12.—By whom, and whence, will the covering be superintended?

A.—By the senior major: from the front, if the column is to be formed at close or quarter-distance: from the pivot flank of the company of formation, if the column is to be an open one.

Q. 13.—The caution having been given, and the base point placed, what command will follow?

A.—The battalion commander will give “REMAINING COMPANIES: FORM FOURLS, RIGHT (LEFT, or INWARDS)” according as the column is to be formed on the right-flank, the left-flank, or a central, company.

C. Q. 14.—Will the captains take their usual places in fours?

A.—Yes.

c. Q. 15.—By whom will the future pivot flank of the company which will form next in front or rear of the

named company be marked, when the formation is on either flank company?

A.—If the formation is on the right-flank company, the pivot flank of the next company will be marked by its own coverer if *right* is to be in front, by the coverer of the named company if *left* is to be in front. If the formation is on the left-flank company, *vice versâ*. (See Q. 18.)

Q. 16.—*When* is it marked?

A.—On the word "FORM FOURLS, RIGHT (or LEFT)".

Q. 17.—If the formation is on a central company, by whom and when, will the future pivot flank of the companies which are to form next in front and rear of the named one be marked; and how will the remaining companies move into column?

c.

A.—Whether right or left is to be in front, the coverer of the named company will, on the caution, mark the future pivot flank of the company which will form in his *front* (Q. 10); the future pivot flank of the company which will form in *rear* of the named one will be marked by its own coverer, on the word "FORM FOURLS, INWARDS". The remaining companies will move into column in front, or rear, of the named company precisely as they form on the flank companies.

Q. 18.—How will the coverers of the remaining companies, in each case, proceed: and why?

A.—If the formation is on the *right*-flank company *right* to be in front, or on the *left*-flank company *left* to be in front; each coverer will run out to mark where the pivot flank of his own company will rest in column: but if the column is to be formed on the *right*-flank company *left* in front, or on the *left*-flank company *right* in front, he will run out to mark the pivot flank of the company that will form *next in front of his own*. Each coverer is thus rendered responsible for the distance of his own company.

Q. 19.—When do the coverers run out to give their points?

A.—When within 20 paces of the pivot flank of the column.

Q. 20.—The companies having formed fours as ordered, what will be done by the leading four of each?

A.—Whenever companies form fours in the direction of a company of formation, the leading fours disengage to front or rear as may be necessary.

C. Q. 21.—How does each captain lead his company into column?

A.—If the leading flank of the company will be its *reverse* flank when formed in column, he will lead his men to his covering-serjeant; then halt, allowing them to move on past the rear of the serjeant, and in a line parallel to the leading company; and as the rear four reaches the coverer, will give "*Halt, front, dress,*" and take post on the exact spot which the coverer will then vacate. If the leading flank of his company will be its *pivot* flank in column, the captain will lead it to the spot where its reverse flank will rest in column; and then, changing direction, will lead on to the coverer who is marking the spot for his pivot flank, and on reaching him will give "*Halt, front, dress*", and fall in.

Q. 22.—What should the captain bear in mind, in giving that word?

A.—That when a company in fours comes to its front, there will always be a file to come up on its left flank. He should, therefore, give his word "*Halt,*" when the company has passed the serjeant one pace, or one pace before it reaches the serjeant, as the case may be.

c. Q. 23.—How does a coverer giving a point for a company in column, face, and carry his rifle; and when does he fall into his place in column?

A.—He takes up his covering with his rifle at the 'recover'; facing to the front, and coming to the

'shoulder', when correctly dressed. He falls into his place in column when the company for which he is giving a point gets "*Halt, front: dress*".

Q. 24.—The serjeant giving the base point for the column ? c.

A.—He gives his point with recovered arms (*see Q. 4, 5*) : coming to the 'shoulder', and falling into his place in column, when the major who has superintended the covering gives the word "STEADY".

Q. 25.—When does the colour party face into the required direction; and how does it move into column ?

A.—It faces when the remaining companies form fours ; and on the word "QUICK MARCH" moves independently, in file, to its place.

Q. 26.—May column be formed on any named company *facing to the rear* ?

A.—Yes : by the named company countermarching on its own ground ; and the remainder forming fours outwards, countermarching to the right or left (according to the flank which is to be in front), and forming as described in this Section.

Q. 27.—In what manner, by whose command, and when, does the named company countermarch ? C.

A.—Invariably by files, by command of its captain, when the battalion commander gives the caution to form the column.

Q. 28.—What will that caution be ?

A.—"OPEN (CLOSE, or QUARTER-DISTANCE) COLUMN ON —— COMPANY, RIGHT (or LEFT) IN FRONT, FACING TO THE REAR".

Q. 29.—Do the captain, coverer, and lieutenant of C. L. the named company change flanks at that caution ? c.

A.—They will change if the column is to be formed *left* in front : for where the right of the company rested before, its left will rest after, the countermarch.

Q. 30.—How do they then proceed?

A.—As explained in *Section XXI.*

Q. 31.—How will the named company face and countermarch, if the column is to be formed *left* in front?

A.—It will face to the *right*, and countermarch to the *left*; in order that that which is to be its pivot flank in column, may lead during the countermarch.

Q. 32.—The covering-serjeant of the named company being employed during its countermarch, who will give the base point for the column (if the formation is on either *flank* company) : or mark the future pivot flank of the company that will form in front of the named one (if the formation is on a *central* company) : and when?

A.—The senior supernumerary serjeant of the named company; on the battalion commander's caution.

Q. 33.—Where do the mounted officers and serjeant-major place themselves, on the caution?

A.—As when column is formed facing to the front.

Q. 34.—While the named company is countermarching, what commands are given to the remaining companies?

A.—“REMAINING COMPANIES: FORM FOUBS, LEFT (RIGHT, or OUTWARDS). RIGHT (or LEFT) COUNTERMARCH, QUICK MARCH”: according to the company on which the column is to form, and to the flank which is to be in front; the companies always being ordered to countermarch to the right when right is to be in front, and *vice versa*.

Q. 35.—How will the rest of the formation proceed?

A.—Precisely as when the column is formed facing to the front.

Q. 36.—What peculiarity is there in the way in

which the companies (if any) that move to the rear of the line, countermarch?

A.—They countermarch round their *rear rank*.

Q. 37.—How do the colour party move into column?

A.—As a company, but in file; receiving the necessary command "*Halt, front: dress*" when they arrive in column.

Q. 38.—How is a *double* column of companies, or subdivisions, formed from line?

A.—In the same manner as a single column.

Q. 39.—On which companies, or subdivisions, of the line will it be formed, and at what distance?

A.—On the two centre companies or subdivisions; at the wheeling distance of the companies, or subdivisions, of which each single column is composed.

Q. 40.—By whom will the base point be given?

A.—By the covering-serjeant of the left-centre company, in front of his captain.

C.

Q. 41.—If the double column is to be one of *subdivisions*, by whom will the covering and distance for the rear subdivision of each company be taken up?

A.—By its senior supernumerary serjeant.

Q. 42.—What is the general rule with respect to the front of a column?

A.—That it should always be as large as the ground will admit of.

Q. 43.—Suppose the front of an open column, halted, is to be diminished by the companies forming subdivisions, or the subdivisions forming sections; who will give the necessary words to each company?

A.—The battalion commander will give a general word to the whole; the leaders of subdivisions or sections giving only the words "*Halt, front: dress*". (See Sec. XXII.)

Q. 44.—How will the front of a quarter-distance column, or of a double column (suppose of subdivisions), on the march, be reduced?

A.—That of the former, by breaking off files from the pivot flanks of companies (*see p. 78*) : that of the latter by the subdivisions being diminished to sections (*see p. 77*). A double column may also, if necessary, advance in double files (or fours) from the centre : as explained for a line at p. 110, Q. 15.

Q. 45.—How does a close column diminish its front?

A.—It cannot diminish its front at all while retaining that formation.

Section XLVIII.—A Battalion in Open Column, wheeling into Line.

(F. E., p. 227.)

C. c. Q. 1.—When an open column, say *right* in front, is required to wheel into line on halted pivots, what will be the caution ; and to whom will it apply ?

A.—“*LEFT WHEEL INTO LINE*”: which will apply to the captain, coverer, and pivot man of each company ; to the band (and to the drummers and pioneers, if formed in front of the column*) ; and to the junior major.

Q. 2.—How will they, respectively, move ?

A.—The captain and pivot file of each company, and the coverer of No. 1 company, will move as directed in *Section VIII.* (Q. 1, 4); the junior major superintending their dressing from the rear of the column : the coverer of each (except the front) company will place himself on the right of its front rank ; and the band, drummers, and pioneers—assuming them to be at the head of the column—will face to the right.

* See p. 92, Q. 23.

Q. 3.—Why does the coverer of each (except the leading company) place himself on its right? c.

A.—In order to preserve his captain's place in line.

Q. 4.—To which flank will the pivot men, when they have faced, look for their dressing?

A.—To the left : see Q. 2.

Q. 5.—Will the junior major give any word, when they are properly dressed?

A.—He will give the word "STEADY."

Q. 6.—What command will then be given ; and its effect?

A.—"QUICK MARCH": on which the companies will commence wheeling into line ; and the mounted officers, band, drummers, and pioneers move to their respective posts in line.

Q. 7.—Who will halt each company, and when?

A.—Its captain, when the man on its wheeling flank is 2 paces from the flank of the company next in line.

Q. 8.—How do the colours get to their place in line ; and by whom will they be dressed?

A.—They wheel up between the two centre companies ; and the captain of the company that wheels up to the centre will dress them with his own men.

Q. 9.—When will each pivot man drop his arm, and covering-serjeant take post on the right of his rear rank?

A.—The former, when the company that wheels up to his own receives "*Eyes front*"; the latter, when his own company gets that word.

Q. 10.—When a column *left* in front is wheeled into line, does the coverer of each (except the leading) company place himself at the caution, and wheel into line, on its wheeling flank ?

A.—No ; he remains steady till the word "MARCH",

164 AN OPEN COLUMN FORMING LINE TO THE FRONT.

and moves up to the *right* of his company during the wheel ; thus preserving his captain's place in line.

c. Q. 11.—Why does he not move up into that place on the caution ?

A.—In order not to obscure the pivot man.

Q. 12.—By whom will the pivots be dressed ?

A.—By the senior major from the rear of the column.

C.L.E. Q. 13.—If a column *on the march* is ordered to

c. wheel into line, how will the officers and covering-serjeant of each company proceed ?

A.—As described in *Section VIII.*, Q. 18, 19.

Section XLIX.—A Battalion in Open Column forming Line to the Front on any named Company.

(F. E., p. 299.)

Q. 1.—When line is to be formed from column, what is the first thing done ?

A.—To determine the alignment.

Q. 2.—The 'alignment' being ?

A.—An imaginary straight line lying between two points ; one of which is termed 'the point of *appui*', the other 'the distant point'.

Q. 3.—Which extremity of the alignment is called the 'point of *appui*' ?

A.—That upon which the formation takes place, and from which the line, or intermediate points, are dressed upon the 'distant point'.

Q. 4.—If line is formed on a central company of a column, will there still be only a point of *appui* and a distant point ?

A.—No ; in that case there will necessarily be two distant points, one on each flank of the intended line.

Q. 5.—By whom will the distant point (or points) respectively be given ; and by whom will the dressing be done from the point of *appui* ?

A.—The adjutant will give the distant point ; marking the right of the battalion, while the junior major marks the left, in a central formation. The dressing is done by the major nearest the point of formation ; or, in a central formation, by the senior major.

Q. 6.—Besides taking up the alignment, what will be done before the formation of the line commences ?

A.—The ‘base of formation’ will be marked.

Q. 7.—Describe the ‘base of formation’ ?

A.—It is the line marked by the coverer and senior supernumerary serjeant of the company of formation : those serjeants placing themselves one in front of each flank file of their company.

c.

Q. 8.—If line were formed to the front, from a *double* column, whether of companies or subdivisions, which would be the company of formation ; and would the base of formation be marked as described in the last Answer ?

A.—Line would, in that case, necessarily be formed on the two centre companies or subdivisions : and the base of formation would be marked by three points, *viz.*, by the coverer of each centre company, and the centre serjeant. See Section LI.

c.

Q. 9.—When do the serjeants marking the base of formation, take their proper posts in line ?

A.—Not until, the formation being completed, the major who has been superintending the covering gives the word “STEADY.”

Q. 10.—Will any point or points, besides those already specified (*viz.*, the point of *appui*, the distant point, and the base points of the company of formation),

166 AN OPEN COLUMN FORMING LINE TO THE FRONT.

be given before the formation of line commences, or while it is proceeding?

A.—Yes; a point will be given in front of the outward flank of each (except the named) company as it comes up into line.

Q. 11.—What are those points called?

A.—'Intermediate points'.

Q. 12.—Which is the 'outward' flank of a company coming up into line?

A.—That which is furthest from the point of *appui*.

c. Q. 13.—At what distance in front of the company of formation are the base points placed; and how is that distance taken?

A.—At arm's length, the distance being taken as explained in *Section XXXI.* (Q. 15-17).

Q. 14.—How will all coverers, while giving points for their companies to dress upon in formations of line, hold their rifles; and how will they face?

A.—They will stand with their rifle at the 'recover', facing towards the point of *appui*.

Q. 15.—Does that rule apply equally to the coverer marking the outer flank of the *front* company (sub-division, or section) of an open column *wheeling* into line?

A.—No: see p. 162, Q. 2.

Q. 16.—When an open column *marching to the front* is to form line, what caution will be given; and whom will it cause to move?

A.—"FORM LINE ON THE LEADING COMPANY": on which the adjutant will move out to give a distant point, and the major of the leading wing move up to the point of *appui*.

Q. 17.—What command will follow?

A.—"REMAINING COMPANIES, LEFT (or RIGHT) WHEEL".

Q. 18.—Will the leading company then be halted?

A.—No: it will not be halted till the remaining companies, having wheeled outwards to a sufficient angle, receive the word "FORWARD".

C.

Q. 19.—At what degree of their wheel will they get that word?

A.—When they have completed the eighth of a circle.

Q. 20.—If the battalion commander cannot trust to his eye for giving the word "FORWARD" at the proper moment, what may he do to ensure accuracy?

A.—Immediately after giving the command "REMAINING COMPANIES, LEFT (or RIGHT) WHEEL", he will begin counting the number of paces taken by the companies in wheeling, and when they have taken in paces, one half the number of files of which each is composed, he will give "FORWARD." (See p. 36, Q. 25).

Q. 21.—How will the captain of the leading company proceed on the word "FORWARD"?

A.—He will halt it the moment that word is given. He will then change his flank; give the word "*Dress*"; and, having dressed his men, will fall in on the right of his company.

C.

Q. 22.—When, and how, will the base points be given in front of the leading company?

A.—They will be given on the captain's word "*Dress*": the coverer placing himself in front of the outer, the supernumerary serjeant in front of the inner, flank. Both serjeants will face and hold their rifles as directed in the A. to Q. 14.

c.

Q. 23.—By whom will the 'intermediate points' be given?

A.—By the coverers of the remaining companies (see Q. 29).

Q. 24.—On which flank will the captains of the

C.

remaining companies march when they have wheeled into echelon?

A.—It is an invariable rule that when companies come up successively into line, the captain of each will lead up on that flank which is nearest the point of *appui*; that being the flank from which the company will be dressed when it arrives in line.

C. Q. 25.—When, and how, will the captains of the remaining companies change flanks in this case?

A.—While their companies are wheeling into echelon: by the rear, as usual.

Q. 26.—How will each of these companies be led up into line?

A.—Its captain, when its inward flank reaches the outward flank of the *rear* rank of the company last formed in line, will give the command “*Right* (or *Left*) *wheel*”, move out, and, when it has wheeled parallel to the alignment, will give “*Halt, dress up*”. He will then dress his men, give “*Eyes front*”, and fall in on the right of his company.

c. Q. 27.—On which flank of his company, when in echelon, will each coverer march; and when will he place himself there?

A.—On its reverse (or ‘outward’) flank; taking post there on the word “*FORWARD*”.

Q. 28.—What will he do when the inward flank of his company arrives within 20 paces of the alignment?

A.—He will run out and, covering on the base points, mark where its outer flank will rest in line.

Q. 29.—By whom will the intermediate points be corrected, and how will they face?

A.—They will be corrected by the major nearest the point of formation. They will face, in all cases, to the point of *appui*. (Q. 14.)

Q. 30.—When do the sergeants giving the intermediate posts take post in line?

A.—When the 2nd company from their own (counting towards the distant point) gets the word "*Eyes front*".

Q. 31.—The mounted officers?

A.—The major who has corrected the points, after giving his word "*STEADY*"; the other major and the adjutant, during the formation.

Q. 32.—The coverer, and senior supernumerary serjeant, of the company of formation?

A.—On the word "*STEADY*". (Q. 9.)

Q. 33.—How does the colour party move up into line, and by whom will it be dressed?

A.—Independently, as a company; and will be dressed by the captain of the *left*-centre company if *right* was in front, and *vice versa*.

Q. 34.—If an open column marching to the *rear* is ordered to form line on its present leading company, how will the formation proceed?

C.

A.—The captain of that company will act precisely as has been explained for the captain of the *proper* leading company, except that his word will be "*Halt, front, dress*". The other captains will *not* change their flanks, and will lead up into line as in forming on a rear company from the halt. (See Q. 59, 60.)

Q. 35.—When should companies coming up into line be halted; and why?

A.—They should always be halted in rear of the points, and then dressed up into line: in order that the points may be kept clear.

Q. 36.—To which flank should the men invariably look for their dressing?

A.—To the battalion point of *appui*.

Q. 37.—When a *halted* column is required to form line on its leading company, what caution will it receive?

170 AN OPEN COLUMN FORMING LINE TO THE FRONT.

A.—The same that is given when the movement is performed on the march ; "FORM LINE ON THE LEADING COMPANY".

C. L. Q. 38.—Who will move on that caution ?

c. A.—The major nearest the point of formation ; the captain, lieutenant, and covering-serjeant of each company ; the senior supernumerary serjeant of the leading company ; and the adjutant.

Q. 39.—How will the captain, lieutenant, and covering-serjeant of each company proceed ?

A.—The captain changes his flank, the lieutenant making a corresponding change in rear ; the coverer of each (except the leading) company changes flank with his captain as usual ; and the coverer and supernumerary serjeant of the leading company mark the base of formation.

Q. 40.—The major nearest the point of formation, and the adjutant ?

A.—Proceed as in the same formation on the march. (Q. 16.)

C. Q. 41.—Will the captain of the leading company change his flank on the caution to form line, whether the column is right or left in front ?

A.—Yes.

Q. 42.—Why will he change when *left* is in front ; seeing that the right, which was the pivot flank in column, will also be his proper flank in line ?

A.—Because it is an invariable rule that in all formations of line, the dressing is made *from* the point of *appui*, or flank whence the formation commences, to the opposite or distant point. (Q. 3.)

Q. 43.—Will he then at once proceed to dress the company ?

A.—No ; he will not do so until the remaining companies are wheeling back into echelon.

Q. 44.—Will the captains of the remaining companies, also, change flanks whether right or left is in front? C.

A.—They will; for the reason given in the Answer to Q. 24.

Q. 45.—What caution or command will next be given (suppose *right* is in front); and to whom will it apply? C. c.

A.—The caution “REMAINING COMPANIES, FOUR PACES ON THE RIGHT BACKWARD WHEEL”: on which the captain, covering-serjeant, and pivot man of each (except the leading) company, will proceed as explained in *Section IX.*, Q. 2-6.

Q. 46.—What command will next be given, and when?

A.—“QUICK MARCH”; when the coverers of those companies, having taken their 4 paces to the rear, have halted and faced about.

Q. 47.—Where will the captain and coverer of each (except the leading) company take post, when the former has given his word “*Eyes front*”? C. c.

A.—The captain on the inner, the coverer on the outer, flank. (Q. 12, 27.)

Q. 48.—When all the companies in echelon have received the command “*Eyes front*” from their captains, and the latter have fallen in on the inner flanks, what will follow?

A.—The word “FORM LINE: QUICK MARCH” will be given by the battalion commander: and the formation will proceed precisely as when the remaining companies, having wheeled into echelon on the march, receive the command “FORWARD”. (Q. 26.)

Q. 49.—When will the supernumerary rank of each company gain its proper distance of three paces from the rear rank?

A.—Whether the movement is done from the halt or on the march, the supernumerary rank of the company that *last* forms in line will step back when that

company gets "*Halt, dress up*"; the supernumerary rank of each of the other companies, when the company which is to form on its outer flank gets "*Right* (*or Left*) *wheel*".

Q. 50.—How will the colour party get to its place in line?

A.—As in the same movement done on the march. (See Q. 33.)

Q. 51.—Suppose line is to be formed *obliquely* to the front of the column, what preliminary step will be necessary?

A.—The leading company will be wheeled back, on its reverse flank, into the required direction.

Q. 52.—The remaining companies then wheeling their 4 paces, as already explained?

A.—No: it will be necessary for the remaining companies to wheel, *in addition to those 4 paces*, half the number of the paces wheeled back by the leading company.

Q. 53.—Why?

A.—Because otherwise they would not be placed, as it is essential they should be, perpendicularly to the lines by which they must march to their several points of formation. (See Section LXII., Q. 32.)

Q. 54.—May not the leading company, instead of being wheeled *back*, be wheeled *up* on its reverse flank?

A.—Yes; in which case the remaining companies will proceed as when an open column forms line to the reverse flank. (See Section L.)

Q. 55.—How is line formed on the *rear* company of an open column?

A.—By the remaining companies being faced about; wheeled 4 paces backward on their proper *pivot flanks*; and then marched up into line, rear rank in front.

C. Q. 56.—Do the captains change flanks on the caution?

A.—No: see Answer to Q. 24.

Q. 57.—By which flank will the captain of the company of formation order it to dress; and when?

A.—By the left if right is in front, and *vice versa*; when the remaining companies are wheeling into echelon.

Q. 58.—How will the captain, pivot man, and c. coverer of each of the remaining companies act?

A.—As explained in *Section IX.*

Q. 59.—The word “**FORM LINE: QUICK MARCH**” C. having been given to those companies, when will the captain of each give his word “*Right* (or *Left*) *wheel*”?

A.—When the inner flank of its proper rear rank reaches the outer flank of the front rank of the company last formed in line.

Q. 60.—What other words will he give?

A.—When his company has wheeled into the alignment, “*Forward*”; and when it is 2 paces in rear of the alignment, “*Halt, front: dress up*”.

Q. 61.—What precaution must be taken by the c. coverers in giving their points?

A.—They must leave room for their companies to pass clear of them; and when their companies have passed to the rear of the alignment, must take a pace to their present front (without losing their covering) in order not to interfere with the pivot flank of the next company coming up into line.

Q. 62.—When line is to be formed on a *central* company of an open column, on which of their flanks will the remaining companies wheel back?

A.—Those in front of the named company, on their proper pivot flanks; those in rear on their reverse flanks.

Q. 63.—Will the captain of the named company C. change his flank on the caution; and from which flank will he dress the company?

A.—He will change his flank only if *right* is in front; the company being in either case dressed from the right.

174 AN OPEN COLUMN FORMING LINE TO THE FRONT.

c. Q. 64.—How do the coverer and supernumerary serjeant giving the base points in front of the named company, place themselves?

A.—The covering-serjeant opposite its left; the supernumerary serjeant opposite its right; facing each other.

Q. 65.—Why do they face inwards?

A.—Because when a formation is on a central company, the centre of that company is the point of *appui* for the line.

Q. 66.—What is meant by ‘a central company’?

A.—Any except either of the two flank companies.

Q. 67.—By whom, and whence, will the coverers, as they run out, be dressed?

A.—By the senior major, from the right of the company of formation.

Q. 68.—What will be the serjeant-major’s duty in this central formation?

A.—He will move up to the left of the company of formation; dress the coverer of the next company on its right; and then move to his place in rear of the line.

Q. 69.—How do the companies in front and rear of the named company move up into line?

A.—Those in front, as when the formation is on the rear company; those in rear, as when the formation is on the front company.

Q. 70.—How will the senior major, on the completion of the formation, pass to his place in rear of the line?

A.—Through the centre. (*See p. 100, Q. 8, 13.*)

Q. 71.—On which company of the column will line be formed, if it is to be formed *in inverted order*; and what will be the caution?

A.—On the front or rear company: the caution being “*In INVERTED ORDER, FORM LINE ON NO. ——*”.

Q. 72.—How will the companies form in that case?

A.—So as to place the right-flank company on the left, the left-flank company on the right, of the line.

Q. 73.—By what other method may line be formed to the front from open column?

A.—The column may be closed to quarter or close distance, and then deployed. (See Sections XXXV., LIII.)

Q. 74.—Whenever the captain moves from the front rank, by whom is his place preserved?

c.

A.—As a general rule, by the coverer: but when both the captain and coverer move out during a formation in line, by the rear-rank man of the pivot file.

Section L.—A Battalion in Open Column forming Line to the Reverse Flank.

(F. E., p. 303.)

Q. 1.—On the caution “**FORM LINE TO THE REVERSE FLANK**”, who will move?

C.

A.—All the captains, whether right or left is in front, will change flanks. (See p. 167, Q. 24.)

Q. 2.—Their covering-serjeants changing with them as usual?

c.

A.—No: the coverers will take the places their captains have left, ready to run out and give their points.

Q. 3.—What will be the next word given?

C.

A.—The captain of the leading company, as he is changing his flank, will give “*Right* (or *Left*) *wheel. Double*”; when the company has wheeled parallel to the alignment, “*Forward*”: and after advancing 3 paces, “*Halt, dress up*”. He will then dress his men on the base points, give “*Eyes front*”, and take post in line.

Q. 4.—By whom, and when, will the base points be given?

A.—By the coverer and senior supernumerary serjeant of the leading company, the moment it gets the word “*wheel*”.

c. Q. 5.—Opposite to which flank will each place himself; and how facing?

A.—As usual, the coverer will take the flank furthest from the captain; and both serjeants will face to the point of *appui*, i.e. to the right if the column was right in front, and *vice versa*.

C. Q. 6.—When, and how, will the next company, and each of the others in succession, be ordered by its captain to wheel into the new direction?

A.—It will be ordered to wheel, at the double, as it reaches the outward flank of the last halted company.

L. E. Q. 7.—When will the supernumeraries of each company step back to their proper distance; and the base points take post in line?

A.—The supernumeraries, as the rear of the column passes clear of them; the base points, as usual, on the major's word “*STEADY*”.

Q. 8.—At what angle to the direction in which the column is marching, can line be formed?

A.—It may be formed at any angle.

C. Q. 9.—Suppose line is to be formed at an angle less than a right angle to the direction of the column?

A.—The captain of the 2nd company will, in that case, be previously warned; in order that he may change direction on the caution.

Q. 10.—Having ordered his company to change direction, how far will he allow it to wheel before giving “*Forward*”?

A.—Till it is on a line parallel to the new alignment.

Q. 11.—When do all the captains in rear of the 2nd company order their companies to change direction?

A.—As they arrive at the spot where that company changed direction.

Q. 12.—What word will each captain give, when his company is to change direction? C.

A.—“*Left wheel*” or “*Right wheel*”, according as right or left is in front.

Q. 13.—When, and how, will he change his flank?

A.—He will continue on the proper pivot flank till he orders his company to change direction; and will then change, passing (as usual) by the rear.

Q. 14.—If the ground does not admit of wheeling up the companies, how may the formation of line to the reverse flank be effected?

A.—By the column breaking into fours from the reverse flank, as described in Sec. XXIV., Q. 12; and the companies forming successively to the reverse flank on their leading files, as directed in Sec. XX., Q. 9–14.

Q. 15.—How does a battalion in open column of subdivisions, or sections, form line to the reverse flank?

A.—Each company proceeds as directed in Section XVII.: the coverer of each (except the leading) company taking his captain’s place when the latter changes flank, until it is time for him to run out and give his point.

Q. 16.—In forming line to the reverse flank from the *halt*, when do captains change flanks; and how is the movement effected? C.

A.—The captains change flanks on the caution; on the word “*QUICK MARCH*” the formation will proceed as above described.

Q. 17.—In all these formations, how will the mounted officers and coverers proceed?

A.—As usual in line formations: see Sec. XLIX.

*Section LI.—A Battalion in Double Column
on the March forming Line to the Front.*

(F. E., p. 307.)

Q. 1.—When a double column is to form line to the front in echelon, how should the movement be performed?

A.—On the march.

Q. 2.—Suppose it is necessary that line should be formed without advancing the two front companies (subdivisions, or sections) ?

A.—In that case the column will be halted, closed to quarter-distance, and deployed (*see Sec. LIII.*).

Q. 3.—On what principle is line formed to the front on the march, from double column ?

A.—On the same principle as from a single column on the march. (*See Section XLIX.*)

Q. 4.—What caution will be given by the battalion commander ; and what rule will he necessarily observe in giving it ?

A.—“**FORM LINE ON THE TWO CENTRE COMPANIES (SUBDIVISIONS, or SECTIONS). REMAINING COMPANIES (SUBDIVISIONS, or SECTIONS), OUTWARDS WHEEL**” : those words being given when the column is at such a distance in rear of the intended alignment, as will allow of the two centre companies (subdivisions, or sections) continuing their advance while the remainder are wheeling into echelon.

C. Q. 5.—By whom, and when, will the two centre subdivisions (suppose the double column is one of subdivisions) be halted ?

A.—They will be halted by the captain of the left-centre company, when the remaining subdivisions, having wheeled the eighth of a circle, get the word “**FORWARD**” from the battalion commander.

Q. 6.—What further command will the two centre subdivisions receive from the left-centre captain ; and why ?

A.—“*Four paces outwards close. Quick March*” : in order that he and the colour party may have room to move up between them.

Q. 7.—When, and by whom, will the base points for the formation of line be given ?

A.—The covering-serjeants of the two centre companies, when the two centre subdivisions get the word “*Halt*”, place themselves at those points at which the outward flanks of their *companies* will rest in line : the centre serjeant, at the same time, moves out of the colour party and gives a centre point.

Q. 8.—How will the three base points respectively face ?

A.—The coverers, as usual, to the point of *appui*, in this case the centre of the line ; the centre serjeant to the right.

Q. 9.—When, and by whom, will the two centre subdivisions be ordered to dress ?

A.—The base points being placed, the captains of the two centre companies will move across by the front and place themselves one on each side of the centre serjeant, and give their own inner subdivision “*Eyes —, dress*”.

Q. 10.—Will the leaders of the remaining subdivisions change flanks ? L.

A.—Yes : see p. 167, Q. 24.

Q. 11.—When, and how, will they change ?

A.—While their subdivisions are wheeling outwards ; passing (as usual) by the rear.

Q. 12.—Where will each coverer place himself when his captain changes flank ; and when will he run out to give his point ?

A.—He will place himself, when his captain changes flank, on the outer flank of his leading subdivision ;

180 A DOUBLE COLUMN FORMING LINE TO THE REAR.

running out, as usual, to take distance for the whole company when the inward flank of that subdivision arrives within 20 paces of the alignment.

L. Q. 13.—Will the lieutenants who are leading subdivisions, move out, on coming up into line, to dress them?

A.—No: as in all other cases of forming line from subdivisions (or sections), after giving their word “—wheel. *Halt, dress up*” they will fall back into the supernumerary rank. (See p. 56, Q. 6.)

C. Q. 14.—From which flank of his company will the captain dress it, when in line?

A.—As always, from that on which he came up into line.

Q. 15.—How will the mounted officers proceed in this formation?

A.—As in every formation of line on the centre or a central company; the junior major will move out to the left, the adjutant to the right, of the alignment: the senior major will dress the covering-serjeants, as they run out to give their points, from the centre. (See p. 165, Q. 5.)

Q. 16.—How will the senior major get to the rear of the line after giving his word “STEADY”?

A.—He will, as usual, pass through the centre of the line.

Q. 17.—How will the serjeant-major be employed during the formation of the line?

A.—He will assist the senior major in superintending the covering from the centre.

L. E. Q. 18.—From what point will the supernumerary rank take up their dressing?

A.—From the centre.

Q. 19.—How may a double column form line on the two centre subdivisions, *facing to the rear*?

A.—By changing front to the rear by the wheel of subdivisions round the centre (*see Sec. XXXVIII.*), and then forming line as already explained.

Section LII.—A Battalion in Double Column forming Line to the Right or Left.

(F. E., p. 311.)

Q. 1.—If line is to be formed to the *right*, on the C. L. march, what word will first be given by the battalion commander : and why ?

A.—The word “COLUMN, BY THE RIGHT” : in order that the leaders on that flank may correct their covering and distances ; the column having previously been (as usual) marching by the left.

Q. 2.—What other caution or command will be given ; suppose line is to be formed to the *right* ?

A.—The caution “FORM LINE TO THE RIGHT” followed by the command “RIGHT WING, RIGHT WHEEL INTO LINE”.

Q. 3.—By whom will both subdivisions of each right-wing company (suppose the column is one of subdivisions) be halted and dressed in line ?

C.

A.—By the captain ; who will turn to the right-about and move, during the wheel, to the right of the company.

Q. 4.—When do the right-wing *rear* subdivision leaders fall back into the supernumerary rank ; and all the left-wing subdivision leaders change to the inward flank of their subdivisions ?

C. L.

A.—When the right wing receives the command “RIGHT WHEEL INTO LINE”.

Q. 5.—On that word, where will the supernumerary serjeant of the right-flank company place himself ?

A.—Opposite to its inner flank ; thus marking the right of the line.

Q. 6.—How will the colour party proceed ?

A.—It will wheel as a subdivision, and form in its proper place on the left of the right-centre company.

c. Q. 7.—When will the covering-serjeants of the right wing run out to give points for their companies ?

A.—On the word "RIGHT WING, RIGHT WHEEL INTO LINE".

Q. 8.—Which flank of their companies will they mark ; and how face in giving their points ?

A.—They will, as usual, mark the outer flank (in this case the left) of their companies ; facing to the point of *appui* (in this case the right).

Q. 9.—How will the subdivisions of each company take up their dressing ?

A.—They will feel to the right of the *company* : see p. 44, Q. 5, 6.

C. L. Q. 10.—How will the left-wing subdivisions form line ?

A.—They will form successively to their reverse flank, as described in Section L., Q. 15.

Q. 11.—When line is formed to a flank from double column, does the centre-serjeant give a point, as in forming to the front ?

A.—Yes ; but facing to the point of *appui*, whether it happens to be on the right or left of the line.

Q. 12.—Will the senior major dress from him ?

A.—No : he will dress from the point of *appui* : i.e. the inner flank of the named wing.

Q. 13.—How does a double column on the march form line to the *left* ?

A.—Precisely on the same principle as when forming to the right ; the command being "LEFT WING, LEFT WHEEL INTO LINE".

Q. 14.—When a *halted* double column of subdivisions is to form line, say to the right, what caution and command will be given by the battalion commander?

A.—“FORM LINE TO THE RIGHT. RIGHT WING, RIGHT WHEEL INTO LINE. THE WHOLE, QUICK MARCH”.

Q. 15.—How will each wing proceed?

A.—The subdivisions of the named wing will wheel into line as explained in *Section XII.*, except that all the coverers will face (with arms at the ‘recover’) to the point of *appui*. The subdivisions of the other wing will step off and form successively to their reverse flank, as in the same formation on the march.

C. L.
C.

Q. 16.—What will be the sergeant-major’s duty, in either of these formations?

A.—To dress the supernumerary rank from the flank on which is the point of *appui*.

Section LIII.—A Battalion in Close or Quarter-distance Column Deploying into Line.

(F. E., p. 315.)

Q. 1.—On the base of which company of the column are all deployments made?

A.—Invariably on the base of the front company.

Q. 2.—How will each (except the named) company move out of column?

A.—At whatever distance the column may be formed, the companies will move out in fours; unless the ground should render it necessary to move in files.

Q. 3.—To which flank of the column will the companies always form fours, when the deployment is on the leading company?

A.—To the pivot flank : unless the caution to deploy is preceded by the words "IN INVERTED ORDER". (Q. 26.)

C. Q. 4.—What is the rule, in a deployment on the leading company, as to captains changing flanks?

A.—The captain of the leading company will invariably change his flank, to be ready to dress his men from the point of *appui*. The remainder, if not already there, will change to that flank of their companies which will lead during the deployment.

C. L. Q. 5.—What caution is given when a close or quarter-distance column, say right in front, is required to deploy on its leading company ; and to whom will it apply ?

A.—"DEPLOY ON THE LEADING COMPANY": on which the captain and lieutenant of the leading company change their flanks ; the coverer and supernumerary serjeant of that company mark the base points in front of it ; the adjutant moves out to mark the distant point ; and the senior major places himself on the right of the base points.

Q. 6.—When the caution is to deploy on any other than the leading company, whom will it affect ?

A.—The captains, covering-serjeants, and lieutenants, of the companies in front of the named one change their flanks ; the coverer and supernumerary serjeant of the named company run out (the former by the pivot, the latter by the reverse, flank of the column), and give base points in front of the flank files of the *leading* company. The mounted officers move up as directed in Sec. XLIX., Q. 5.

C. Q. 7.—How will the captains act on the command "FORM FOUBS, LEFT (RIGHT, or OUTWARDS)" ?

A.—The captain of the named company will stand fast : the captain of the company next in rear (or front)—or, if the formation is on a central company, the captains of the companies next in rear and front—of

the named one, will take a pace to the front and face to the right-about; the remainder will place themselves on the pivot flank of their leading fours.

Q. 8.—The covering-serjeants, in each case?

c.

A.—The covering-serjeant of the named company, who is giving a base point, will, of course, stand fast. If the deployment is on the front company, the coverer of the company next in rear will run out to mark where its left or right flank (according as the column is right or left in front) will rest in line: the remainder will take their usual places in fours.

Q. 9.—Opposite to which flanks of the leading company of the column do the coverer and supernumerary serjeant marking the base of formation, respectively place themselves?

A.—When the deployment is on the front or rear company the coverer takes the flank furthest from the point of *appui*: when on a central company, the coverer gives his point opposite to the reverse flank, the supernumerary serjeant opposite to the pivot flank. They both face to the point of *appui*: facing, therefore, towards each other, if the formation is on a central company (*see p. 174, Q. 64, 65*).

Q. 10.—If the column is to deploy on its *leading* company, how will the captain of that company proceed when “*QUICK MARCH*” is given to the remaining companies; and how will each of the latter be led up into line?

A.—The captain of the leading company will dress it, give “*Eyes front*”; and, if on the left, change his flank. The captain of the company next in rear of the leading one will stand fast, and allow his company to move onward a space equal to its front; he will then give it the word “*Front turn*”, and when at two paces from the alignment “*Halt, dress up*”. Each of the remaining captains, when he hears the word “*Front turn*” given to the company which will precede him into line, will halt and proceed in the same manner.

C. Q. 11.—Who will lead each company when its captain halts?

A.—The covering-serjeant.

C. Q. 12.—Where will each captain place himself as he gives his word "*Front turn*"?

A.—On the inward flank of his company: where he will march till he arrives at two paces from the alignment. He will then move out, giving the command "*Halt, dress up*"; place himself in front of the 2nd file from the outward flank of the company which preceded him into line; and having dressed his men and given "*Eyes front*", will take post in line.

Q. 13.—Which is the 'inward' flank of each company during the deployment?

A.—That which is nearest to the point of *appui*: being the flank next to the company on which the column deploys, whether that company is a flank or central one. See p. 166, Q. 12.

C. Q. 14.—Will the captain of each company *invariably* order it to turn to its front the moment its rear four reaches him?

A.—No; if the fours are marching at incorrect distances (as may unavoidably happen in marching over rough or broken ground), the word "*Front turn*" must be given when the *leading* four has moved on to the company's distance from the captain; irrespective of the position of the fours in rear.

Q. 15.—What point should be attended to by captains, if their companies have formed fours to the *left*?

A.—They should, in giving their word "*Front turn*", make allowance for the file which will come up on the left of the preceding company.

Q. 16.—Should any captain allow his company to get too far, before he gives the word "*Front turn*", what will become the duty of the succeeding captain?

A.—To give his command "*Front turn*" as much too soon, as the captain of the preceding company gave that word too late: otherwise his own company

and all the remaining companies will, in marching up into line, have to oblique to the inward flank.

Q. 17.—If the deployment is on the *rear* company, when will the named company and those in its front be marched up into line ? C.

A.—When their fronts are cleared by those companies by which they are respectively preceded in the column.

Q. 18.—Will the named company move up into line at the same degree of march as the other companies ?

A.—No : it will move up in *double* time, in order that it may be dressed on the base before any of the other companies arrive in line.

Q. 19.—What is the procedure in a deployment on a *central* company ?

A.—The companies in rear of the named one move as when the deployment is on the front company ; those in front, and the company itself, as in a deployment on the rear company. The majors and adjutant proceed as described in Sec. XLIX. (Q. 5).

Q. 20.—When the captains are out in front, dressing their men, by whom are their places in line preserved ?

A.—See p. 175, Q. 74.

Q. 21.—How does the colour party, in each case, get to its place in line ; and by whom will it be dressed ? C.

A.—It faces into the required direction when the companies form fours, steps off on the word “*QUICK MARCH*”, and deploys independently. When the deployment is on the leading company, the colour party will be dressed by the captain of the left-centre or of the right-centre company, according as the column was right or left in front : in deploying on the rear company, *vice versa*.

Q. 22.—When does the supernumerary rank of each L. E. company correct its distance from the rear rank ?

A.—If the formation is on the leading company, it steps back as its rear is cleared by the companies deploying : if the formation is on the rear company, it gains its distance as it halts in line.

c. Q. 23.—When do the coverers (except the coverer of the named company) run out to give their points ?

A.—The coverer next in rear, or the coverers next in front and rear, of the named company, on the word "FORM FOURES, ——" : the remainder, as usual, when they arrive at 20 paces from the alignment.

Q. 24.—In all these movements, how will the mounted officers proceed ?

A.—As directed in Sec. XLIX., Q. 5.

c. Q. 25.—When will the coverers, base points, and the band, move to their posts in line ?

A.—The base points and coverers, as directed in Section XLIX., Q. 9, 30 : the band, during the movement.

Q. 26.—How will a company deploy "IN INVERTED ORDER" on its leading company ?

A.—It will deploy to its reverse flank : so that the proper right-flank company will be on the left, the proper left-flank company on the right, of the line.

C. c. Q. 27.—If a column right in front were ordered to deploy in inverted order on its leading company ; to which of the captains and coverers would the caution apply, and how would the serjeants giving the base-points face ?

A.—The captains and covering-serjeants of the companies in rear of the leading one, would change to their reverse flanks ; the serjeants giving the points in front of the leading company would face to the left, in that case the point of *appui*.

Q. 28.—Can a *double* column be deployed into line ?

A.—Yes ; at quarter or close distance, it may deploy

on its two centre companies (or subdivisions) like a single column.

Q. 29.—By whom will the base points be given?

C.

A.—By the centre serjeant, and the coverers of the two centre companies. (See Section LI., Q. 7.)

Q. 30.—In what case will it be necessary for a double column to deploy both wings in the same direction; and on which of its companies (or subdivisions) will each wing deploy?

A.—When it moves up to either extremity, instead of to the centre, of the intended alignment. The wing that deploys *first* will deploy on its rear company or subdivision: the other wing, on its leading company or subdivision.

Q. 31.—In the deployment of a double column of subdivisions to one flank, which subdivision of each company in the wing that deploys first will be led up into line by the *captain*?

C.

A.—That which will first arrive in line: so that he may be properly placed for dressing his whole company when the other subdivision is in its place.

L.

Q. 32.—What will be done, then, on the caution to deploy, by the captain and lieutenant of each company in the wing that will deploy first?

A.—They will change places with each other.

Q. 33.—How will the lieutenants act, on leading their subdivisions up into line?

A.—As in all similar cases: *eiz.*, after giving the word "*Halt, dress up*", they will fall back into the supernumerary rank.

Section LIV.—A Battalion in Line changing Front by the intermediate formation of Open Column on any named Company.

(F. E., p. 327.)

Q. 1.—How is the front of a line changed by the intermediate formation of open column?

A. Simply by forming open column on the named company (*see* Section XLVII.), right or left in front, according to the flank to which the position is to be changed, and to the flank of the line which is to be thrown back or forward; and by wheeling the column, when formed, into line (*see* Section XLVIII.).

Q. 2.—When will the column be formed *right*, and when *left*, in front?

A.—When the change of front is to be to the right, the column will be formed left in front; and *vice versa*.

Q. 3.—Is any arrangement necessarily made, previously to the formation of the column?

A.—Not if the new line is to be at right angles with the old line; but if it is to be formed obliquely, the company on which the column is to be formed must wheel back so many paces as will make it perpendicular to the new alignment.

C. Q. 4.—When, and by whose command, will the named company (if necessary) wheel back?

A.—On the caution; by command of its captain, who will face towards the company and step back one pace before giving his word.

Q. 5.—How will the captain of the named company know whether to wheel it back, or not?

A.—If the change of front is not to be at right angles to the old line, the battalion commander, in specifying the company of formation in his caution, will add “*WHICH WILL WHEEL BACK ON ITS RIGHT (or LEFT)*”.

Q. 6.—When will the named company be wheeled back on its right, and when on its left? C.

A.—It will be wheeled back on its right if the change of front is to be to the right; and *vice versa*.

Q. 7.—What rule will be observed by the captain of the named company with respect to changing his flank: and how will he order the company to wheel?

A.—He will change, on the caution, to that which will be its pivot flank in column: and will order the company to wheel '*On the move*'.

Q. 8.—In these changes of front, which will be the point of *appui* of the new line?

A.—That flank of the named company which is the point of intersection of the old and new lines.

Q. 9.—If the change of front is on a flank company, say the *right*, obliquely to the old line, by whom will the direction of the new alignment be indicated?

A.—By the supernumerary serjeant of the named company who will, as usual, give a point at 6 paces from its pivot flank.

Q. 10.—When the change of front is on a central company, and obliquely to the old line, by whom is the new direction given?

A.—By the covering-serjeant of the named company who will, as usual, mark the covering and distance for the company that is to form, in the column next in front of his own.

Q. 11.—How do the mounted and company officers, C.L.E. the serjeant-major, and the covering-serjeants proceed, during the formation of the column and in the wheel into line? C.

A.—Precisely as explained in *Sections XLVII. and XLVIII.*

Section LV.—A Battalion in Column forming Square.

(F. E., p. 333.)

Q. 1.—What is the object of forming square ; and how many ranks deep are squares generally formed ?

A.—Squares are formed, *four-deep*, to resist attacks of cavalry. Two-deep squares are used to protect baggage, &c., against infantry only.

Q. 2.—When an open column, halted, is required to form square on its *leading* company, what caution or command will be given ?

A.—The caution “ON THE LEADING COMPANY, FORM SQUARE” : followed by the command “QUICK (*or DOUBLE*) MARCH”.

Q. 3.—Who will move on the word “MARCH” ?

A.—The whole of the battalion except the leading company.

C.L.E. Q. 4.—Will no individual of the leading company move ?

A.—Yes ; its flank files will face outwards ; and its captain, coverer, and supernumeraries run to the rear of the next company.

Q. 5.—What command will the next company receive, as it closes on the leading company ?

A.—It will halt without any word of command : and its flank files will face outwards.

Q. 6.—What command will be given to the companies that are to form the side faces of the square ?

A.—“*Sections outwards*” : on which they will wheel outwards by sections ; the sections of the right subdivisions wheeling to the right, those of the left subdivisions to the left.

C. Q. 7.—By whom, and when, will the word “*Sections outwards*” be given to those companies ?

A.—By their respective captains, as each successively arrives at quarter distance from the company in his front.

Q. 8.—Will the sections, when they have wheeled the quarter circle, get the word "*Halt, dress*"?

A.—No : the men will halt without any command, and touch towards the leading company, which will be considered the front of the square. The 2nd section of each company will close on the 1st, and the 3rd on the 4th, immediately after completing the quarter-circle wheel.

Q. 9.—How will the two rear companies of the column proceed? C.

A.—They will close up, and successively receive from their respective captains the command "*Halt. Right-about face*"; their flank files then facing outwards.

Q. 10.—When do the captains, covering-serjeants, C.L.E. and supernumeraries of the two rear companies run c. into square?

A.—The moment the 3rd company from the rear gets the word "*Sections outwards*".

Q. 11.—How does the colour party act?

A.—It inclines, during the march, to the centre of the company it is following: wheeling up with the pivot subdivision on the word "*Sections outwards*", and halting in rear of it.

Q. 12.—When an open column, halted, is required to form square on the *rear* company, what caution will be given; and whom will it cause to move?

A.—"ON THE REAR COMPANY, FORM SQUARE". All stand fast till the next word.

Q. 13.—What will be the next word, and its effect?

A.—"RIGHT-ABOUT FACE": on which the whole column will face about.

Q. 14.—On the following word "QUICK (or DOUBLE) C.L.E. MARCH", how will the formation proceed? C.

A.—The *present* leading company of the column will stand fast; the formation will then, with one exception, proceed as when square is formed on the proper leading company (Q. 2-11).

Q. 15.—What is that exception?

A.—Each of the side-face companies, instead of getting the word "*Sections outwards*" as it arrives at quarter distance from the last halted company, will close on that company and then get "*Front turn. Sections outwards*": the colour party also turning to the front before it wheels into its place in square.

Q. 16.—When will the colour party turn to the front?

A.—With the company in whose proper rear it is marching in column.

C. Q. 17.—What command will be given to the two proper front companies, as they close?

A.—"*Halt, front*".

L.E. Q. 18.—When will the captains, coverers, and supernumeraries of those companies run on into square?

A.—When the 3rd company from the proper front gets "*Sections outwards*".

C. Q. 19.—If an open column, *on the march*, is ordered to form square on its present leading company, what will be the duty of the captain of that company?

A.—To instantly give it the word "*Halt, dress*"; and, together with his coverer and the supernumeraries, to run to the rear of the 2nd company.

Q. 20.—If square is to be formed from a halted open column, say right in front, on the *centre*, what will be the caution?

A.—"*ON THE LEFT - CENTRE COMPANY, FORM SQUARE*".

Q. 21.—What difference would it make if the column were *left* in front?

FORMING SQUARE FROM QUARTER-DISTANCE COLUMN. 195

A.—The formation would be on the right-centre company.

Q. 22.—Suppose right in front; what command will follow, and how will the formation proceed?

C.

A.—“RIGHT WING, RIGHT-ABOUT FACE. QUICK (or DOUBLE) MARCH”: on which last word the captain of the named company will instantly give “*Sections outwards*”. The other companies of the left wing proceed as when square is formed on the leading company: the companies of the right wing, as when square is formed on the rear company.

Q. 23.—When an open column *taking ground to a flank by fours* is required to form square, on which company will the square be formed?

A.—Invariably on one of the two centre companies: on the left-centre if right is in front, and *vice versa* (see Q. 20, 21).

C.

Q. 24.—What words will, in that case, be given by the battalion commander; and when will the named company get “*Sections outwards*”?

A.—“ON THE LEFT (or RIGHT) CENTRE COMPANY, FORM SQUARE. WINGS INWARDS TURN”: the captain of the named company giving “*Sections outwards*” the moment his company has turned to its front into line.

Q. 25.—What difference is there between the formation of square on the leading company from *open*, and from *quarter-distance*, column?

A.—In the formation from quarter-distance column, the *battalion commander* gives “SECTIONS OUTWARDS” as the 2nd company closes on the 1st.

Q. 26.—Will the caution “FORM SQUARE” cause the colour party to move?

A.—Yes; it will close (or, if on the march, incline) to the centre of the company in its front; so that it may not, while wheeling up in rear of that company, impede the wheel of the sections of the next.

Q. 27.—When do the captains, covering-serjeants, and supernumeraries of the two rear companies, get into square ?

A.—When the side-face companies receive the command “*SECTIONS OUTWARDS*”.

Q. 28.—May a quarter-distance column also form square on its rear company, or on the centre ?

A.—No : there would not be time for the necessary words of command to be given : a column at that distance will, therefore, always form square on its *proper leading company*.

Q. 29.—Suppose the column is retiring, or taking ground to a flank by fours ?

A.—It will be ordered to turn to the front before the caution to form square is given.

C. Q. 30.—How does a *double column* of companies form square ?

A.—If the column consists of 10, or more, companies, it will form square as a single column forming square on the leading company : except that the side-face companies will be ordered to bring “*Subdivisions outwards*”.

Q. 31.—But if the column consists of less than ten companies : suppose of *six* ?

A.—The battalion commander will first order all the companies to form four-deep, and close to the centre. On the caution to “*FORM SQUARE*” (or, if halted, on the word “*MARCH*”), the two leading companies will halt (or stand fast), forming the front face : the two next companies will move on till they arrive at *subdivision* distance from those in their front, and will then be ordered (by the captain on the left) to wheel outwards ; thus forming the side faces. The two rear companies, having closed on the flanks of the side faces, will be ordered (by the captain on the left) to halt and face to the right-about..

Q. 32.—How does a double column of *subdivisions* form square ?

A.—It will form on its two leading *subdivisions*, in precisely the same manner as a single column of companies forming square on its leading *company*.

Q. 33.—When a double column of companies, or subdivisions, forms square, how does the colour party get into its place in square?

A.—By doubling round the flank of the two companies, or subdivisions, immediately in its rear.

Q. 34.—Suppose the double column is one consisting of companies *less than ten in number*, and forms square (*see Q. 31*) accordingly?

A.—The colour party will remain in its place.

Q. 35.—Where, and how, are the mounted officers and the serjeant-major employed, when square is being formed?

A.—If the square is being formed merely for the instruction of the men, they remain outside it, placing themselves at the several angles to superintend the dressing of the men: if it were formed for actual defence, they would, of course, move inside it.

Q. 36.—In all the formations described above, what is the rule with respect to *Riflemen* fixing their swords?

A.—They will fix swords without word of command on receiving the word "*Halt*" or "*Halt. Right-about face*"; the men of the side-face sections (or subdivisions) fixing, as they halt of themselves. When square is formed on the leading company (or two leading subdivisions) from the halt, the men of those companies (or subdivisions) will fix swords when the word "*Quick MARCH*" is given to the remainder.

Q. 37.—How does a close column form square?

A.—If attacked so suddenly that it cannot open out to quarter distance so as to form square in the regular way, it may prepare for cavalry as a company in close column of sections (*see Sec. XXV.*).

Section LVI.—A Square preparing for Cavalry.

(F. E., p. 338.)

Q. 1.—What caution is given when a square is to resist an attack of cavalry ; and its effect ?

A.—“PREPARE FOR CAVALRY” : on which the 2nd and 4th ranks each close up a pace of 9 inches.

Q. 2.—What position will the ranks assume, on the following word “READY”?

A.—They will proceed as directed in *Section XXV.*, Q. 10, 11.

Q. 3.—When, and how, should the standing ranks of the square be ordered to fire ?

A.—The moment the square is formed, the battalion commander will give “FILE-FIRING FROM THE RIGHT (LEFT, or BOTH FLANKS) OF THE — FACE (or FACES). —COMMENCE”. See p. 83, Q. 15.

Q. 4.—Describe ‘File-firing’.

A.—On the word “COMMENCE”, the file on the named flank makes ready and comes to the ‘present’; the front-rank man firing first, the rear-rank man immediately afterwards : both men then return to the capping position, and from thence go on with their loading in quick time. As the flank file comes to the ‘present’ the next file makes ready, the latter coming to the ‘present’ when the former returns to the capping position. The next file, and the remainder in succession, proceed in like manner. After the first round, each file, as soon as loaded, will fire independently.

Q. 5.—By what signal, or command, will the men cease firing?

A.—As the noise would prevent any word of command being heard, the ‘Cease Firing’ will be sounded on the bugle.

Q. 6.—How will the files of the firing face (or faces) act, when that call is sounded?

A.—Those files that may have made ‘ready’ will half-cock, and shoulder: those whose rifles are unloaded will complete their loading, and shoulder in like manner, all independently. *Riflemen* will come to the ‘order’ instead of to the ‘shoulder’.

Q. 7.—What command will the kneeling ranks receive, if required to fire?

A.—The command “KNEELING RANKS (*or KNEELING RANKS OF THE — FACE*), FIRE A VOLLEY. AT — YARDS, READY.—PRESENT” will be given by the battalion commander.

Q. 8.—How will those ranks proceed after firing?

A.—They will resume the position of defence against cavalry until the battalion commander gives the word “LOAD”; when they will spring to attention at the right half-face, come to the position of ‘prepare to load’ as standing ranks, and go on with their loading in quick time.

Q. 9.—What is done next?

A.—When the ranks that knelt have re-loaded, the battalion commander gives the word “SHOULDER ARMS”, or (to *Riflemen*) “ORDER ARMS”.

Q. 10.—Why are not the men, if armed with the long rifle, directed to “ORDER”, as in a company square (p. 83, Q. 19)?

A.—Because that is a light infantry formation, this is not.

Q. 11.—If the kneeling ranks of the square have not been ordered to fire, on what word of command will they rise?

A.—On the word “SHOULDER (*or ORDER*) ARMS”.

Q. 12.—When will the rear-rank men resume their proper distance from the front ranks?

A.—As they come to the ‘shoulder’ or ‘order’.

Section LVII.—A Battalion in Square re-forming Column or Double Column.

(F. E., p. 338.)

Q. 1.—When a square formed from a *column of companies*, or from a *double column of subdivisions*, is to be reduced, what caution or command is given; and to whom will it apply?

A.—The caution “*RE-FORM COLUMN*” (preceded, in the case of *Riflemen*, by the command “*UNFIX SWORDS*”): which will apply to the rear sections of the side faces; to the pivot men of *all* the side-face sections; and to the flank men of the two front and two rear companies.

Q. 2.—How do they proceed?

A.—The rear sections of the side faces step back to the wheeling distance of the sections in their front; the pivot men of the front and rear sections of those faces face to the proper front of the column: and the flank men of the two front and two rear companies face, the former to the proper front, the latter to the proper rear.

Q. 3.—Which are the pivot men of the side-face sections?

A.—The *right-hand* men of the sections forming the right face of the square, the *left-hand* men of the sections forming the left face; those being the men on whom the sections wheeled forward, and will wheel back.

C.L.E. Q. 4.—Who else will move, on the caution to reform column?

A.—The commanders, covering-serjeants, and supernumeraries of the side-face companies; and the colour party; will necessarily step back with those sections in rear of which they are respectively posted in the square.

Q. 5.—What command is next given; and its effect?

A.—“*QUICK MARCH*”: on which the side-face sec-

tions of the square wheel back, those of the right face wheeling on their right, those of the left face on their left ; and the front company (or the two centre subdivisions of the front face), and the two rear companies (or the four subdivisions of the rear face), move off to quarter distance.

Q. 6.—How do the captains, coverers, and super- C.L.E.
numeraries move, on the word “QUIOK MARCH”? c.

A.—The captains instantly run out and take up their covering on the pivot flanks of their companies ; and the covering-serjeants and supernumeraries get to their respective posts in column, taking care not to impede the wheeling of their sections.

Q. 7.—When the sections of the side faces have C. L.
wheeled back into column, and the companies (or sub-
divisions) of the front and rear faces have acquired
their proper distance, do they receive any command to
halt, front, or dress?

A.—Yes : the two companies (or four subdivisions)
of the rear face receive the command “*Halt* ; *front* ;
dress” ; and the front company (or two leading subdivi-
sions), and all the side-face sections, “*Halt, dress*”.

Q. 8.—From whom ?

A.—From the captains, if the square was formed from column of companies : from the respective *left-*
wing subdivision leaders if the square was formed from double column of subdivisions. (See p. 145, Q. 8.)

Q. 9.—When a square formed from double column of subdivisions re-forms double column, how does the colour party get to its place in rear of the two leading subdivisions of the column ?

A.—By doubling round the flank of the two subdivi-
sions immediately in its front.

Q. 10.—How is a square formed from *double column* of *companies*, reduced?

A.—If the column consists of 10, or more, compa-
nies, and has therefore formed square as described in

Section LV. (Q. 30), it will re-form column as explained in this *Section*: except, of course, that the side faces will wheel back by *subdivisions*, and that the two front and four rear companies will move out to *sub-division* distance.

C. Q. 11.—But if square has been formed from a double column of companies *less than ten* in number (*see p. 196, Q. 31*)?

A.—The two front companies will, in that case, stand fast (their flank men facing, on the caution, to their front). On the word “*QUICK MARCH*” the side faces will wheel back by *companies* into column; and the two rear companies (the flank men of which will face to the rear on the caution) will move off to, and halt and front—by command of the captain on the proper left—at, *subdivision* distance. The whole will then be ordered by the battalion commander to re-form two-deep.

Q. 12.—How will the colour party get to its place in rear of the two leading companies?

A.—It will already be in its place: *see p. 197, Q. 34.*

Q. 13.—Where, and how, are the mounted officers and the serjeant-major employed, while a square is re-forming column?

A.—On the command “*QUICK MARCH*”, the senior major places himself in front of the pivot flank of the leading company, and corrects the covering of the captains; at the same time the other mounted officers and the serjeant-major move to the reverse flank of the column, to superintend the parallel dressing of the companies when the respective leaders give their word “*Halt, dress*”.

Section LVIII.—A Battalion in Line forming Square.

(F. E., p. 339.)

Q. 1.—How is square formed from a battalion in line?

A.—By forming either a quarter-distance column on a named company, or a double column of subdivisions on the two centre subdivisions (*see Sec. XLVII.*) ; and then forming square on the leading company, or two leading subdivisions, as explained in *Sec. LV.*

Q. 2.—If the intermediate formation is to be double column of subdivisions, will the double column be formed (as usual) at subdivision distance?

A.—No ; the caution will state that it is to be formed at quarter distance.

Q. 3.—If the intermediate formation is single column, on what company will the column generally be formed?

A. On the right-centre or left-centre company.

Q. 4.—How will line be re-formed?

A.—The square will re-form column (or double column) in the usual way ; and the column will then be deployed into line.

Q. 5.—If a battalion *advancing* in line were required to form square, would it be halted in order to do so?

A.—No ; it would be wheeled into open column of companies, and square then formed on the leading company in the usual way.

Section LIX.—A Battalion forming Company Squares; and re-forming Companies.

(F. E., p. 339.)

Q. 1.—What caution will be given by the battalion commander, in order to form the battalion into independent company squares?

A.—“Form COMPANY SQUARES”.

C. Q. 2.—How, and by whose command, will each company form square?

A.—Each company will form close column of sections and company square, by command of its captain: the movement proceeding in every respect as directed in *Section XXV.*, except that troops armed with the long rifle, having their bayonets already fixed, will not have to fix as they get into column.

Q. 3.—The captains' words will be?

A.—“Form close column of Sections.—Quick March.—Prepare for Cavalry : Ready”.

Q. 4.—When will each captain order his company to fire?

A.—When the ‘Commence Firing’ is sounded on the bugle.

Q. 5.—How, and by whose command, will the original formation be resumed?

A.—The battalion commander will give the word “RE-FORM COMPANIES”: on which each captain will re-form his company as directed in the *Section (XXV.)* above referred to, except that he will not give the command “Unfix bayonets”.

Q. 6.—Will Riflemen be ordered to unfix swords?

A.—Yes.

Section LX.—A Square marching in any Direction.

(F. E., p. 340.)

Q. 1.—Can a battalion square be moved, without first being re-formed into column?

A.—Yes.

Q. 2.—What caution will be given, and whom will it cause to move?

A.—“THE SQUARE WILL ADVANCE (RETIRE, or MOVE TO THE RIGHT, or LEFT)”, on which the serjeant-major will move out and place himself on the flank which will direct (*see Q. 5*).

Q. 3.—What command will follow; and to which face, or faces, of the square will it apply?

A.—“INWARDS FACE”; on which the face which is to lead will stand fast, the three others facing into the named direction.

Q. 4.—To what position will the men bring their rifles, as they step off.

A.—To the ‘slope’; if *Riflemen*, to the ‘shoulder’.

Q. 5.—By which flank will the square, while in motion, be directed?

A.—That will depend on the direction in which it is moving: *see p. 87, Q. 11.*

Q. 6.—Who will regulate the direction?

A.—The serjeant-major, on the directing flank.

Q. 7.—To what point should attention be given, while the square is in movement?

A.—That the men of the faces moving in files remain properly closed up.

Q. 8.—When the square gets the word “HALT”, will

the men face outwards without word of command, as in the case of a company square?

A.—Yes.

Q. 9.—Will they then correct their dressing?

A.—No: they will remain perfectly steady, unless ordered to close or dress.

Section LXI.—A Battalion forming Square Two-deep, and re-forming Column.

(F. E., p. 341.)

Q. 1.—When is a two-deep square used?

A.—When baggage is to be protected against infantry; it may also be used when orders, &c., are to be read.

Q. 2.—How will the battalion stand for the formation of the square?

A.—In column at open or half distance; or in double column of companies or subdivisions.

Q. 3.—How is the square formed?

A.—On the same principle as a four-deep square.

Q. 4.—Why cannot the square be formed from column at less than subdivision distance?

A.—Because it would then be four-deep instead of two-deep.

Q. 5.—What differences will there be in the two formations?

A.—In a two-deep square, the front and rear faces respectively consist only of one company; the leading company of the column forming the front face, its rear company the rear face: and the side-face companies, i. e. all the remainder, wheel outwards by subdivisions instead of sections.

Q. 6.—In forming from double column of *companies*?

A.—The two leading, and two rear, companies will form the front and rear faces of the square; the remainder of the column wheeling outwards by *companies*.

Q. 7.—Can a two-deep square be moved?

A.—Yes: the side-face companies being ordered to form fours in the required direction, the rear face to face about.

Q. 8.—How will column be re-formed?

A.—The front face will stand fast; the side faces wheel back into line; and the rear face move off to its original distance.

Section LXII.—Oblique Echelon Movements and Formations.

(F. E., pp. 344–366.)

Q. 1.—How is an oblique echelon formed from line, in order to take ground diagonally to the front and to a flank?

A.—By wheeling forward the *companies*, if the echelon is to be formed of companies, any degree less than the quarter circle: if the echelon is to be formed of *subdivisions* or *sections*, they will always be wheeled forward the eighth of a circle.

Q. 2.—How are all the component parts of an echelon placed, when moving to a flank; and why must they always be wheeled less than the quarter circle?

A.—Since each company, or part of a company,

will move on a line perpendicular to its own front, all the component parts of the echelon must be *parallel to each other*, in order that their lines of direction may also be parallel. A quarter-circle wheel would place the companies (or their parts) not in echelon but in open column.

Q. 8.—When a battalion is required to wheel into echelon of *companies* to either flank, on fixed pivots, what caution is given ?

A.—“WHEEL INTO ECHELLON OF COMPANIES TO THE RIGHT (or LEFT).”

C. Q. 4.—Do the captains move, on that caution ?

A.—If the echelon is to be formed to the *left*, they change flanks : see Q. 6.

Q. 5.—Which is the ‘inner’ flank of a company wheeled forward from line into echelon ?

A.—That on which it wheels into echelon : the opposite being termed the ‘outer’ flank.

C. c. Q. 6.—On which flank of their company will each captain and his covering-serjeant march, while in echelon ?

A.—The captain on the inner, the coverer on the outer flank ; aligned with the present front rank.

Q. 7.—Who else will move on the caution ?

A.—The major nearest the flank of the line to which the echelon is to be formed, will move up on that flank : see Q. 10.

C. c. Q. 8.—What is the next word given ; and its effect ?

A.—“COMPANIES, — PACES TO THE RIGHT (or LEFT) WHEEL” : on which the captain, coverer, and pivot file of each company will act as described in Section IX. (Q. 2-6) ; except that the whole of the coverers, before commencing to take their paces from the 8th files, will glance their eyes to the named flank, in order to take the time from the serjeant on that flank.

Q. 9.—Will the coverers, when they have taken C.
their paces, be dressed?

A.—Any slight correction in their covering that
may be necessary, will be made by the major on the
named flank.

Q. 10.—On the following word “QUICK MARCH”, C.
will each company move as directed in the Section
(IX.) above referred to?

A.—Yes.

Q. 11.—When a company is in echelon, at what L.E.
distance is the supernumerary rank?

A.—One pace distant, as in column.

Q. 12.—How is a battalion wheeled, on fixed pivots,
into echelon of subdivisions or sections?

A.—An echelon of subdivisions (or sections) is
always formed on ‘moveable’ pivots.

Q. 13.—Who will guide the battalion, while in C.
echelon of companies?

A.—The captain of the leading company: who
should, therefore, carefully select points to march on,
perpendicular to that front which his company has
acquired by wheeling into echelon.

Q. 14.—To which flank will each company leader
look for distance and oblique covering, during the
advance in echelon?

A.—To the flank towards which the battalion is
inclining.

Q. 15.—What distance will he keep from the inner
flank of the company in his front; that of his own
company, or that of the preceding one?

A.—That of the company in his front.

Q. 16.—Where do the mounted officers march?

A.—The major of the wing nearest the directing
flank places himself in rear of the captain of the
leading company, whose direction he will superintend;

the other major and the adjutant look to the covering of the line of pivots.

Q. 17.—What caution and command will be given when a battalion in line is to wheel forward into echelon of companies, subdivisions, or sections, on *moveable* pivots, say from the *halt*?

A.—“TAKE GROUND TO THE RIGHT OR LEFT IN ECHELLON OF COMPANIES (SUBDIVISIONS, OR SECTIONS). ON THE MOVE, BY COMPANIES (SUBDIVISIONS, OR SECTIONS), RIGHT (OR LEFT) WHEEL. QUICK MARCH.—FORWARD”.

C. c. **Q. 18.**—When will the captain and coverer of each company move to their proper posts in echelon?

A.—If the echelon is one of *companies* the captain (if not already there) will change to his inner flank on the caution: the coverer falling in on the outer flank at the word “*FORWARD*”. In an echelon of *subdivisions* or *sections*, to whichever flank formed, both captain and coverer retain the places they occupy in line: *see p. 51, Q. 4*. The same rules apply when the wheel into echelon is made on the march.

Q. 19.—By whom will an echelon of subdivisions, or sections, be led; and who will be responsible for distance and dressing?

A.—By the leader (captain or pivot file, as the case may be) of the leading subdivision or section. If the echelon is formed to the *left*, the pivot men of *all* the subdivisions (or sections) will keep their dressing and distance in the line of pivots; if it is formed to the *right*, the captain of each company will keep the distance and dressing of his right subdivision (or section), the left subdivision (or each of the remaining sections) being led by its pivot man. *See p. 52, Q. 7.*

Q. 20.—How will the colour party move, when a battalion wheels into echelon?

A.—They will wheel up, and form a section of themselves; occupying the same position whether the

echelon is formed of companies, subdivisions, or sections.

Q. 21.—Suppose a battalion is required to wheel into echelon to the rear?

A.—It will be faced about; and the companies (subdivisions, or sections) will be wheeled forward, rear rank in front.

Q. 22.—Should an echelon of companies be halted, and required to wheel back into a line parallel to that from which it was formed, what caution will be given?

A.—“RE-FORM LINE”.

Q. 23.—Will the covering-serjeants, on that caution, run out to measure to the rear the same number of paces which they before measured to the front?

A.—No: if not already on the right of their companies, they change to that flank, and keep their respective captains' places in line.

Q. 24.—How will the captains and pivot men proceed?

A.—The captains will take a pace to their front, and face towards their companies; the pivot men will face into the line, raising their right (or left) hand, and be dressed by the major on the directing flank.

Q. 25.—When do the captains take post, and how will the colour party get to its place, in line?

A.—The captains take post when they have halted and dressed their men in line, and given the word “*Eyes front*”. The colour party will wheel back into line, with the companies, on the word “**QUICK MARCH**”; and take up its dressing with the company that wheels back to it from echelon.

Q. 26.—May line be re-formed in like manner, *on the march*?

A.—Yes: the captains marking time, and their companies wheeling back on them into line.

c.

C.

C.

C. Q. 27.—When will the captains, if the wheel into echelon was to the *left*, change to their right flanks?

A.—When the battalion commander, on the completion of the wheels back into line, gives the word “FORWARD”.

Q. 28.—Should it be required to form the line *obliquely* to the original line, what previous arrangement will necessarily be made?

A.—That depends on the angle which the new line is to form with the old one.

Q. 29.—Suppose the line is to be formed on the prolongation of the leading company as it stands in the echelon?

A.—In that case the remaining companies, in order to acquire the degree of echelon necessary for forming in the intended direction, must wheel back, on their pivot flanks, half the number of paces they originally wheeled from line into echelon.

Q. 30.—But if *those companies* already stand at the degree of echelon necessary for forming in the intended direction, what will be done previously to marching them up into line?

A.—The *leading* company of the echelon will, in that case, be wheeled forward on its pivot flank the same number of paces which it originally wheeled from line into echelon: the remaining companies standing fast.

Q. 31.—In what case will all the companies, except that of formation, have to be wheeled *forward* before they can be marched up into line; and how many paces will they wheel?

A.—If the company of formation, in wheeling from the echelon into the new alignments, takes *more* paces than the number it originally wheeled into echelon, all the remaining companies must be wheeled up *half the number* of those *extra* paces.

Q. 32.—Under what rule do the three supposed cases (Q. 29–31) come; and what is the object of the rule?

A.—Under the rule that the company of formation must be wheeled up from the original alignment at double the angle that the remaining companies are wheeled ; or, the remaining companies be wheeled to half the angle that the company of formation is wheeled. The object of the rule is to place the companies which move up to form line *perpendicular to the lines by which they must march to their points of formation.* Each company in echelon must, in order to get to its place in line, form a right angle with a line drawn from its own inner flank to the outer flank of the company last formed in line. .

Q. 33.—Suppose an echelon originally formed by the companies wheeling 6 paces forward to the right from line, is required to form line on its leading company as its stands ; what caution will be given ?

A.—“ FORM LINE ON THE LEADING COMPANY ” : followed by “ REMAINING COMPANIES, THREE PACES ON THE RIGHT BACKWARD WHEEL ”. (See Q. 29.)

Q. 34.—Who will move on the first caution ?

A.—The adjutant will move out to the left of the new alignment, to give the distant point.

Q. 35.—How, and when, will the coverer and supernumerary serjeant of the company of formation give the base points ? c.

A.—They will give their points precisely as directed in Sec. XLIX. (Q. 13, 22): when the remaining companies have wheeled into echelon and, having been dressed, have got the word “ *Eyes front* ”.

[Q. 36.—Suppose the *company of formation* were wheeled up (*see* Q. 30), when would its coverer and supernumerary serjeant place themselves as base points in front of it ? c.

A.—When it had wheeled up the ordered number of paces, and got the word “ *Halt* ”.]

Q. 37.—How do the captain and coverer of each C. c. the remaining companies proceed, when those com-

panies, on the word "FORM LINE: QUICK MARCH", march up into line?

A.—Precisely as when the rear companies of an open column move up to form line on its front company. (*See Section XLIX., Q. 26.*)

Q. 38.—Do the mounted officers, and the serjeants marking the base of formation, resume their places in line; and does the colour party move up into line; as in the *Section* just referred to?

A.—Yes.

Q. 39.—For what other purpose, besides taking ground to the front and a flank, is the oblique echelon used?

A.—For changing the front of a line.

Q. 40.—May the echelon, in that case, be composed either of companies, subdivisions, or sections?

A.—No; it will invariably be formed of *companies*.

Q. 41.—Will it be formed on fixed, or on moveable, pivots?

A.—It may be formed on fixed, but as a general rule should be formed on moveable pivots; that being the most convenient and expeditious method.

Q. 42.—On what company can the change of front be made?

A.—On any company, or on the centre of the battalion.

Q. 43.—Mention the cases in which that flank of the line which is opposite the flank of formation, will be thrown *forward* and *back*?

A.—If the change of front is on the *right-flank* company to the *right*, or on the *left-flank* company to the *left*, the opposite flank will be 'thrown forward': if the change of front is on the *right-flank* company to the *left*, or on the *left-flank* company to the *right*, the opposite flank will be 'thrown back'.

Q. 44.—If the change of front is on a central company, or on the two centre companies?

A.—One flank of the line will necessarily be thrown forward, the other back : the right being thrown forward, and the left back, if the change of front is to the left ; and *vice versa*.

Q. 45.—Will the caution, in each case, state which flank is to be thrown forward or back ?

A.—Yes.

Q. 46.—When the formation is to be *on moveable pivots*, by whom, and when, will the base company be wheeled into the new alignment ?

A.—By its captain, on the caution.

Q. 47.—Will he order the company to wheel '*On the move*' ?

A.—Always ; unless, the change of front being *at right angles*, the company has to wheel the quarter circle. (See p. 25, Q. 7, 8.)

Q. 48.—When the battalion commander intends the line to change front at right angles, what will he state in his caution ?

A.—To the usual caution that the right (or left) is to be "thrown forward (or back)", he will add the words "**THE QUARTER CIRCLE**".

Q. 49.—If the formation is on either of the flank companies, suppose the right, and the opposite flank of the line is to be thrown *back*; by what command will the captain of the company of formation wheel it into the required direction ?

A.—"No. 1, *On the right backward wheel. Right-about face. Quick March*", or "No. 1, [† *Right-about face.*] *On the move; on the right backward wheel. Quick March*", according as the change of front is to be at right angles, or oblique, to the old line.

Q. 50.—When a battalion *on the march* is ordered to

† This word will be given if the wheel is to be more than the eighth, and less than the quarter, of a circle.

change front on either flank company without halting, how will that company wheel?

A.—It will wheel at the double, in order that it may be halted and dressed in time for the remaining companies to form upon it.

C. Q. 51.—When the change of front is on a flank company, the opposite flank thrown *forward*, how do the remaining companies, having been wheeled into echelon and got the word “**FORWARD**”, form up into the new line?

A.—Precisely in the same way as the rear companies of an open column forming line on its front company. (*See Sec. XLIX., Q. 26.*)

Q. 52.—If the opposite flank is to be thrown *back*, and the remaining companies consequently wheel into echelon rear rank in front?

A.—In that case, those companies will form up in line as the remaining companies of an open column forming line on its *rear* company. (*See Sec. XLIX., Q. 59, 60.*)

Q. 53.—What command will be given to the remaining companies by the battalion commander, in the two cases mentioned in Q. 51 and 52?

A.—In the former, “**REMAINING COMPANIES, ON THE MOVE, RIGHT (or LEFT) WHEEL. QUICK MARCH.—FORWARD**”: in the latter, “**REMAINING COMPANIES, RIGHT-ABOUT FACE. ON THE MOVE, LEFT (or RIGHT) WHEEL. QUICK MARCH.—FORWARD**”.

Q. 54.—How will the colour party move into line?

A.—As an independent section in the echelon: and will be dressed by the captain of that centre company which wheels upon it into line.

C. Q. 55.—When the change of front is on a central company, how will the captain of that company order it to wheel: and from which flank will he dress it?

A.—He will order it to wheel “*On the centre*”; and will dress it from the flank that wheels forward. (*See Sec. X., Q. 2, 10, 14.*)

C.

Q. 56.—Supposing front to be changed on the centre of the battalion, by whom will the two centre companies be wheeled into the new alignment; and on what pivot will they wheel?

A.—They will be ordered to wheel (“*On the centre*”) by the left-centre company’s captain: the front-rank man of the inner file of the company that wheels forward will be the pivot.

Q. 57.—Does the rule about giving “*On the move*” (Q. 47) apply equally when the formation is on a central company, or on the two centre companies?

A.—Yes.

Q. 58.—Will the right-centre captain move out?

A.—No; he will remain in his place on the right of his company.

Q. 59.—How are the base points given, when the change of front is on a central company?

A.—As directed in Sec X., Q. 11, 12.

Q. 60.—When front is changed on the two centre companies, what base points are given?

A.—The same as when line is formed on the two centre companies (or subdivisions): see Section LI., Q. 7.

Q. 61.—Suppose the change of front is to be at right angles; what will be done, on the caution, by either, or both, of the coverers of those companies?

A.—The coverer of the one that is to wheel forward will mark when its wheeling flank will rest in line. The other coverer will remain in his place.

Q. 62.—What commands will be given to the remaining companies by the battalion commander, when the change of front is on the centre of the battalion, or on a central company?

A.—“LEFT (*or* RIGHT) WING, RIGHT-ABOUT FACE”, or “COMPANIES ON THE LEFT (*or* RIGHT), RIGHT-ABOUT FACE”: followed by “ON THE MOVE, INWARDS WHEEL. QUICK MARCH.—FORWARD”.

C. Q. 63.—How will the companies in echelon form up in line?

A.—Those that were faced about, as when the formation is on a flank company, the opposite flank thrown *back*: the remainder, as in the same formation with the opposite flank thrown *forward*.

Q. 64.—By what rule will the battalion commander be guided, in giving his word “FORWARD” to the remaining companies?

A.—By that explained in the Answer to Q. 32.

C. c. Q. 65.—When will the captains of those companies place themselves (if not already there) on their ‘inner’, and the coverers on their ‘outward’, flanks?

A.—The former, on the caution; the latter, on the word “FORWARD”.

c. Q. 66.—Suppose the change of front is to be effected by echelon formed on *fixed* pivots, by whose command will the coverer of the company of formation wheel from the 8th file from the pivot man?

A.—By that of the battalion commander, who will place himself at the point of *appui*.

Q. 67.—Who will be the pivot man when the change of front is on a central company, or on the centre of the battalion?

A.—The front-rank man on the inner flank of the subdivision, or company, that is to wheel forward.

Q. 68.—Will the battalion commander, supposing the change of front is to be *oblique* to the old line, specify the number of paces to be stepped by the coverer?

A.—No; he will order him to halt when he reaches the intended alignment.

Q. 69.—When the named company is to be wheeled *back* (less than the quarter circle), in which case the coverer will, of course, wheel from the *rear* of the 8th

file, what rule will be observed by the battalion commander in halting the coverer?

A.—He will halt him at sufficient distance beyond the alignment to allow for the depth of the two ranks.

Q. 70.—When will the coverers of the remaining companies commence stepping their paces; and how will the coverers and pivot men of those companies (if any) which are 'thrown back' proceed?

A.—The coverers of the remaining companies commence stepping their paces on the battalion commander's word "— PACES TO THE RIGHT (or LEFT) WHEEL". The coverer and pivot man of any company that is faced about and 'thrown back' will act as explained in *Section IX.*, Q. 18, 19.

c.

Q. 71.—In all the above-mentioned formations, how do the mounted officers proceed?

A.—Precisely as explained in *Section XLIX.*

Q. 72.—How may square be formed, during a change of front in echelon?

A.—All the companies may be wheeled up, towards the point of formation, into open column, and then ordered to form square (*see Section LV.*) on the leading company: or, the companies in echelon may form independent company squares (*see Section LIX.*).

Section LXIII.—Direct Echelon Movements and Formations.

(F. E., p. 366.)

Q. 1.—What is the use of direct echelon?

A.—It is formed for the purpose of advancing or refusing a flank.

Q. 2.—What caution is given to a battalion in line, in order to advance in direct echelon of companies from a flank?

A.—“THE BATTALION WILL ADVANCE IN DIRECT ECHELLON OF COMPANIES, AT WHEELING (*or — PACES*) DISTANCE, FROM THE RIGHT [*or LEFT*]”.

Q. 3.—Will the echelon ever be formed of subdivisions or sections?

A.—No.

Q. 4.—By what will the battalion commander be guided, in specifying the distance at which the companies are to march off?

A.—If it is his intention to re-form line parallel to the original alignment, he may order the companies to march off at any named distance: if he intends to change front to either flank at right angles, the companies must march off at wheeling distance.

C. c. Q. 5.—On which flank of their companies do captains and coverers march, in direct echelon?

A.—The captain of the leading company on its outer flank: the captain of each of the other companies on the inner flank, *viz.* that which is nearest the preceding company. The coverers march on the opposite flank to their captains.

c. Q. 6.—If the companies are to advance from the *right*, to whom (besides the officer on the left of the line, and his coverer) will the caution apply?

A.—To the covering-serjeants, who will change to the left flank of their companies.

Q. 7.—Will the coverers, on changing their flanks, move up on the left of their front rank?

A.—No: that place being occupied by the captain of the next company, they will remain in rear until their respective companies move out of the line.

C. c. Q. 8.—Suppose the advance is to be from the *left*?

A.—All the captains change to the left of their companies: each covering-serjeant taking a pace to the rear and a side-pace to the left, to let his captain pass, and then placing himself on the right of the front rank of his company.

Q. 9.—Will the supernumerary rank of the line L.E. close up on the caution?

A.—Yes: and the supernumerary rank of each company will remain at one pace distance while in echelon.

Q. 10.—The captains or covering-serjeants (as the case may be) having changed flanks, what will follow?

A.—The captain of the company on the named flank will give the word "*By the —. Quick March*" and lead straight to his front, selecting points as usual.

Q. 11.—By whose command, and when, will each of the remaining companies advance?

A.—By that of its captain; when the company which is to precede it in the echelon has acquired the named distance.

Q. 12.—How should each captain give the word "*Quick March*" to his company, so that the men may step with those of the company in their front?

A.—He must observe how the men of that company are stepping; and give the word "*Quick*" as their left feet, and "*March*" as their right feet, are placed on the ground.

Q. 13.—How do the colours move, in direct echelon?

A.—If the advance commences from the right, they follow in rear of the left of the right-centre company; if from the left, they follow in rear of the right of the left-centre company.

Q. 14.—Who will guide the advance of a direct C. echelon?

A.—The captain of the leading company.

Q. 15.—Suppose the battalion is cautioned to "Re- C. c.
TIRE" in direct echelon of companies?

A.—The companies will be faced about in succession, and marched off one after the other at the ordered distance; by their respective captains. If the retreat is to commence from the left, the captains; if from

222 RE-FORMING LINE FROM DIRECT ECHELLON.

the right, the coverers; change flanks on the caution: in the latter case, each coverer, on changing his flank, will place himself on the left of his *rear* rank, so as not to interfere with the captain of the company on his left.

C. c. Q. 16.—With which rank of their companies will the captains and coverers be aligned during the retreat?

A.—With the proper rear rank.

Q. 17.—Suppose the echelon, while advancing, is cautioned to form line on its *leading* company, what will be the duty of the captain, coverer, and senior supernumerary serjeant of that company?

A.—The captain will halt the company, on which the coverer and senior supernumerary serjeant will mark the base of formation in the usual way. The captain having dressed the company and given “*Eyes front*”, will take post: the base points, as usual, standing fast till the completion of the formation.

Q. 18.—Will the covering-serjeants of the other companies run out, as usual, to give points for their companies?

A.—Yes.

Q. 19.—May the echelon form line in the same manner on any other of its companies?

A.—Yes: those companies which are in front of the named one facing (or turning) to the right-about, and marching into the alignment.

c Q. 20.—Suppose the echelon is halted and cautioned to re-form line on its *rear*, or on a *central* company; when will the coverer and supernumerary serjeant of that company give the base points?

A.—On the battalion commander's caution “RE-FORM LINE ON THE REAR (or No. —) COMPANY”.

C. c. Q. 21.—If line is formed on the rear, or a central, company, which of the captains and coverers will change flanks?

A.—Those in front of the named company: see Sec. XLIX., Q. 24.

Q. 22.—When will they change?

C. c.

A.—On the battalion commander's word "REMAINING COMPANIES (or COMPANIES IN FRONT), RIGHT-ABOUT FACE (or TURN)".

Q. 23.—If the echelon is *on the march* when cautioned to re-form line on the rear, or a central, company; when will the named company be ordered by its captain to halt?

C.

A.—On the word "RIGHT-ABOUT TURN".

Q. 24.—May a direct echelon form line at right angles to the original alignment?

A.—Yes: it may form line to the flank opposite to the one from which the advance was made, provided the companies marched off at wheeling distance. (Q. 4.)

Q. 25.—How will the formation proceed?

C.

A.—The battalion commander will give "FORM LINE TO THE RIGHT (or LEFT). BY COMPANIES, RIGHT (or LEFT) WHEEL": and, the companies having completed the quarter circle, "FORWARD". Line will then be formed on the leading company, which will be halted and dressed, in the usual way, by its captain.

Q. 26.—If the echelon is thus wheeled to a flank, C. c. will the captains and covering-serjeants change their flanks?

A.—Yes: see Q. 5.

Q. 27.—When will they change?

A.—During the wheel.

Q. 28.—What will be the position of the colour party, after the wheel?

A.—It will be in rear of that company which, before, it preceded?

Q. 29.—When a battalion in direct echelon is required to form line in *an oblique direction*, what will be done?

C.

A.—The echelon will be wheeled forward into open

column, and the captains directed to correct their distances and their covering in the required direction. The column will then be wheeled into line.

Q. 30.—Suppose a battalion advancing in echelon is halted, and ordered to form column in front of the rear, or on a central, company ; how will the formation proceed ?

A.—It will, in all respects, proceed as when column is formed from *line* on any named company. (See Sec. XLVII.)

Section LXIV.—Inspection or Review of a Battalion.

(F. E., p. 502.)

Q. 1.—How is a battalion drawn up for review, singly ?

A.—In line at open order, as described in *Section XXVIII.* : except that there is a difference in the position of the drummers and pioneers, and of the staff-officers.

Q. 2.—How are they respectively posted ?

A.—The divisions of drummers form, two-deep, on either flank of the line ; the pioneers, two-deep, on the right of the drummers on the right of the line ; the staff-officers, on the right of the whole.

Q. 3.—What caution will be given as the reviewing officer approaches ?

A.—The battalion commander will give the caution “GENERAL SALUTE” ; followed by the command “PRESENT ARMS”.

C.L.E. Q. 4.—How do the officers salute when the men present arms ?

A.—At the 2nd motion of the ‘present’ they recover swords ; and at the 3rd motion, lower them to the

right, the point in the direction of the right foot; at the same time raising the left arm as high as the shoulder, and bringing the hand (knuckles uppermost and fingers extended) to the peak of the shako.

Q. 5.—What other compliments will be paid to the reviewing officer?

A.—The band will play, the drums beat, and the colours be allowed to fly.

Q. 6.—On what occasion will the colours be dropped?

A.—When the caution is "*ROYAL SALUTE*".

Q. 7.—How do the officers act when the men are C.L.E. directed to "SHOULDER ARMS"?

A.—They recover swords at the 1st motion of the 'shoulder', and port at the 2nd motion.

Q. 8.—How will the men stand, when the reviewing officer is riding down the line?

A.—With shouldered arms.

Q. 9.—Will the colours be allowed to fly; or be dropped when the reviewing officer passes?

A.—No.

Q. 10.—When will the battalion be directed to C.L.E. resume close order; and who will move on the caution?

A.—The caution "REAR RANK TAKE CLOSE ORDER" will be given while the reviewing officer is proceeding to the camp colour placed in front of the centre of the line. On that word, all the officers will move as directed in Sec. XXVIII., and the drummers and pioneers face inwards.

Q. 11.—On the word "MARCH"?

A.—The whole will move to their respective posts at close order.

Q. 12.—What is done next?

A.—The line will break into open column of com-

panies right in front (*see Sec. XLVIII.*), preparatory to marching past.

Q. 13.—What preparations are made, previously to the column being put in motion?

A.—Points are placed by the adjutant, to mark the angles of the oblong round which the column is to march.

Q. 14.—What other point will be necessary?

A.—The camp colour at which the reviewing officer will place himself to see the companies march past.

Q. 15.—Where are the wheeling points placed?

A.—One at about a company's wheeling distance in front of the column, and one at 2 or 3 paces in rear of the column, both covered in a line clear of the captains' left arms; the two other points will mark the flanks of the saluting base, and will be covered in a line 4 paces from the camp colour at which the reviewing officer will take his station.

Q. 16.—When the line breaks into column, where will the drummers and pioneers take post?

A.—As the movement is preparatory to marching past, they will (instead of taking post with their companies, as directed in *Sec. XXVIII.*, Q. 26) move, together with the band, to the head of the column.

Q. 17.—In what formation?

A.—The pioneers will form in a single rank in front; the band next, in two ranks; and the drums, in two ranks, in rear of the band.

Q. 18. By whom will the column be put in motion?

A.—By the battalion commander, who will give "SLOPE ARMS.—MARCH PAST IN SLOW TIME. SLOW MARCH".

C.L.E. Q. 19. How will each company and its officers, &c.,
c. march past?

A.—Precisely as directed in *Section XIII.*

Q. 20.—Which are the places of the mounted officers, while the column is marching past?

A.—The colonel, or, in his absence, the lieutenant-colonel, will be about 8 paces in front of the 2nd section of the leading company, till he approaches the saluting point; he will then salute, move out, and remain near the reviewing officer till the column has passed. The senior major will be in front of the 3rd section of the leading company, a little in rear of the commanding officer; the remaining field officers follow 6 paces in rear of the column; the lieutenant-colonel (if not in command) being on the right, the junior major next, and the adjutant on the left.

Q. 21.—Do all the mounted officers salute as they approach the reviewing officer?

A.—Yes; invariably in marching past in slow time.

Q. 22.—Do the staff-officers or staff-serjeants, or does the musketry instructor, march past?

A.—The musketry instructor does, with his own company: the others do not.

Q. 23.—Where is the serjeant-major posted, when a column marches past?

A.—In rear of the 3rd file from the right flank of the leading company.

Q. 24.—When does the band commence playing?

A.—When the leading company receives the word "*Forward, by the right*" on the completion of its 2nd wheel.

Q. 25.—How will it move when it arrives in front of the reviewing officer?

A.—It will turn to the left, wheel to the right, halt and front opposite to him, and continue playing until the rear of the column has passed.

Q. 26.—Will the column party change flank during the 2nd wheel?

A.—Yes; and when the right-centre company takes

open order, will dress with the supernumerary rank, at 3 paces from the rear rank.

Q. 27.—Are the colours cast loose when passing the reviewing officer?

A.—Yes; and *lowered* to persons entitled to that honour.

Q. 28.—When will they change back to the rear of the proper pivot flank of the right-centre company?

A.—When the company is performing its 3rd wheel.

Q. 29.—What command will be given by the battalion commander, when all the companies have passed the reviewing officer?

A.—“BREAK INTO QUICK TIME—QUICK”.

Q. 30.—How does a column march past in *quick time*?

A.—The companies move as directed in Sec. XIII. (Q. 23–26): the colours change their flanks as in marching past in slow time, but are not cast loose or lowered.

Q. 31.—Do the mounted officers ever salute, in marching past in quick time?

A.—Only when the battalion marches past in quick, without having first marched past in slow, time.

Q. 32.—What will be the caution and command when a battalion is to march past in quick, without having first marched past in slow, time?

A.—“MARCH PAST IN QUICK TIME. QUICK MARCH”.

Q. 33.—When the battalion, having marched past in slow and quick time, or in quick time only, arrives on the ground it originally occupied, what commands will be given?

A.—The battalion commander will give “BATTALION, HALT. LEFT WHEEL INTO LINE.—QUICK MARCH”. (See Section XLVIII.)

Q. 34.—Line having been formed, what is done next?

A.—The battalion commander, having directed the men to order arms, unfix bayonets, and stand at ease, will give the caution “MANUAL AND PLATOON EXERCISE,* TAKING THE WORD FROM THE SENIOR MAJOR”: and will then proceed to the rear of the line; the senior major moving out to the front, and taking command.

Q. 35.—What caution and command will the senior major give?

A.—Having ordered the men to take out their muzzle-stoppers, called them to attention, and directed them to shoulder arms, he will give the caution “FOR MANUAL EXERCISE, REAR RANK TAKE OPEN ORDER” followed by the command “MARCH”.

Q. 36.—How do the officers act, on that caution and C.L.E. command?

A.—The captains face to the right on the caution; and on the word “MARCH”, move to 6 paces in rear of the centre of their companies. The supernumerary officers stand fast on the caution, stepping back with the supernumerary rank on the word “MARCH”.

Q. 37.—The covering-serjeants?

A.—Each will take a side-pace to the left on the caution; moving up on the right of the front rank of his company when his captain has passed to the rear.

Q. 38.—Will the captains, when they have reached their posts in rear, receive a command to front?

A.—No: as each arrives in the place above mentioned, he will halt, front, and remain at attention.

Q. 39.—When the senior major opens the ranks, where do the remaining field-officers, and the band, drums, and pioneers take post?

A.—They will remain, throughout the Manual and Platoon, in the places they occupy at close order.

c.

C.

* For words of command for the Manual and Platoon (Review) Exercise, see APPENDIX (1).

Q. 40.—The colour party?

A.—Will also stand fast: the colours being kept at the ‘order’ and furled.

Q. 41.—In what time will the Manual and Platoon be performed?

A.—The former always in slow time; the latter in both slow and quick. See APPENDIX (2).

c. Q. 42.—Do the covering-serjeants perform those exercises with the men?

A.—No: they remain steady at the ‘shoulder’.

C. Q. 43.—When the ranks are closed after the Manual exercise, will the captains resume their posts in line?

A.—No; they will merely take 2 paces to their front: the coverers remaining on the right of their companies.

C. c. Q. 44.—When will the captains and coverers take their proper places in line?

A.—On the major’s word “STAND AT EASE”.

Q. 45.—How will the senior major proceed when he has given that word?

A.—Having first directed the men—unless they are going to load—to replace their muzzle-stoppers, he will fall back to his proper post in rear of the line. The battalion commander will then advance and take the orders of the reviewing officer.

Q. 46.—When two (or more) battalions are to be inspected together, how will they be formed?

A.—Either in line, with intervals of 6 paces between them; or in a line of columns, between which the same intervals will be preserved.

Q. 47.—What is such a line of columns termed; and how will each column be formed?

A.—It is termed a line of ‘contiguous’ columns: the columns will be formed at quarter distance, right in front.

Q. 48.—How will the officers be posted?

A.—As usual when right is in front.

Q. 49.—If the battalions are drawn up for review in C.L.E. *line*, will their formation at open order be the same as when a single battalion is so drawn up (Q. 1, 2)?

A.—With one exception, *viz.* that the staff-officers, band, drummers, and pioneers will be posted as described in the A. to Q. 8, p. 95.

Q. 50.—If they are drawn up in line of *contiguous columns* in review order, where will the officers and band, &c., of each battalion be posted?

A.—The officers of each battalion will be 2 paces in front of it, sized from flanks to centre, and at equal distances one from the other: *see* Q. 53. The band and drums will form in several ranks on the right of the column, their front being in line with the leading company; with the pioneers, formed in two ranks, in rear of them.

Q. 51.—The mounted and staff-officers, and the colours, of each battalion?

A.—The battalion commander will be 3 paces in front of the colours; which will be in the centre of the line of officers. The adjutant will be on the left of the line of officers; the other field-officers, 4 paces in front of the centre of the right and left subdivision of the leading company, respectively. The staff-officers will be in rear of the battalion, with the staff-serjeants in rear of them.

Q. 52.—Will the reviewing officer be received with the same compliments as by battalions in *line*?

A.—Yes; except that the ranks will not be opened.

Q. 53.—By what commands will the officers and C.L.E. colours of each battalion move out to the front, and resume their places in column?

A.—On the words “OFFICERS AND COLOURS TO THE FRONT. QUICK MARCH” and “OFFICERS AND COLOURS TAKE POST. QUICK MARCH” given, on cautions from the brigadier, by their own commander.

Q. 54.—When the columns march past, what commands will be given to each battalion?

A.—“**FORM FOURS, RIGHT. QUICK MARCH**”, on clearing the 1st point “**FRONT TURN**”, and at each succeeding angle of the ground “**LEFT WHEEL: DOUBLE—FORWARD, QUICK**”. The column will also (except in the case of *Riflemen*, who in quarter-distance column march past at the ‘trail’) be directed to shoulder on entering the saluting alignment, and to slope after passing the reviewing officer.

Q. 55.—What distance should be preserved between the columns?

A.—Twenty-five paces.

C. L. Q. 56.—When will the officers and colours change flanks?

A.—They will change, by word of command, before the wheel that brings them on to the saluting base; changing back after the 3rd wheel on the word “**FORWARD—QUICK, BY THE LEFT**”.

Q. 57.—Will the mounted officers salute?

A.—Yes.

Q. 58.—When will the leading column, and the remaining columns, be halted?

A.—The leading column, on the original alignment; the remainder, as they close upon it to 6 paces interval.

Q. 59.—In what formation will the columns be standing?

A.—They will be ‘in mass’.

Q. 60.—What is done next?

A.—The mass of columns will be wheeled into line of columns; and the intended movements proceeded with.

Q. 61.—Suppose a brigade originally formed in line of contiguous columns at quarter-distance, is required to march past in *open* column?

A.—Each column, when it has wheeled into the saluting base, will be halted and ordered to open from the front, and march past in quarter-distance column.

Q. 62. What are "Grand Divisions"?

A.—When battalions march past in columns of *double* companies, each two companies will form a 'grand division'.

Q. 63.—How are the companies placed, and where C. are the captains posted?

A.—The left companies move up on the left of the right companies; the captains are posted on the outward flanks of their companies.

Q. 64.—At what distance, and by which flank, do grand divisions march past?

A.—They march past by the right, at company distance from each other.

Q. 65.—Where does the colour party march past?

A.—In a six or eight company battalion, in rear of the 3rd, 4th, and 5th files from the right of No. 3; in a ten company battalion in rear of the same files from the right of No. 5.

APPENDIX (1).

METHOD OF PROVING A COMPANY.

The Company, having been told off as directed in Sec. I. (Q. 10), will be proved as follows :—

- [* *Shoulder Arms.*] *Mark time: Quick.*
- By Subdivisions, right wheel.* (When in echelon)—*Mark time. Re-form Company.*
- By Subdivisions, left wheel.* (When in echelon)—*Mark time. Re-form Company.*
- By Sections, right wheel.* (When in echelon)—*Mark time. Re-form Company.*
- By Sections, left wheel.* (When in echelon)—*Mark time. Re-form Company.*

[The Company will then be turned to the right-about and proved, by the above words of command, rear rank in front.]

- Halt, front.*
- Form fours, deep.—Front.*
- Form fours, right.—Front.*
- Form fours, left.—Front.*
- Form fours, about.—Front.*

The Company will also be proved, rear rank in front, in forming fours on the march : as follows :—

- Mark time. Quick.*
- Right-about turn.*
- Form fours, deep.—Rear turn.*
- Form fours, right.—Rear turn.*
- Form fours, left.—Rear turn.*
- Halt, front.*

As the right-centre Company of a quarter-distance Column. — On the leading Company, Form Square: Quick March. Sections outwards.

* Not given to Riflemen.

[* *Unfix swords.*] *Re-form Column : Quick March.*
Halt, dress.

Form close column of Sections : Quick March.
Unfix bayonets (or swords).
Re-form Company : Quick March.

[† *Right Sections (1st and 3rd), Order Arms. Left Sections (2nd and 4th), Order Arms.*]

Right Subdivision, Stand at ease. Left Subdivision, Stand at ease.

WORDS OF COMMAND FOR THE *MANUAL* AND *PLATOON*.

The Company (or Line) standing at open order, with bayonets (or swords) unfixed and Arms shouldered, will receive the following cautions and commands :—

[The figures in brackets show the number of motions.]

Caution. Manual Exercise.

1. Secure Arms (3)—Shoulder Arms (3).
2. Order Arms (3)—Fix Bayonets (2)—Shoulder Arms (3).
3. Present Arms (3)—Shoulder Arms (2).
4. Port Arms (2)—Charge Bayonets (1)—Shoulder Arms (2).
5. Advance Arms (3)—Order Arms (3)—Advance Arms (3).
6. Shoulder Arms (3)—Support Arms (3)—Shoulder Arms (3).
7. Slope Arms (1)—Shoulder Arms (2).

Rear rank take Close order.—March.

* See p. 197, Q. 36.

† Not given to *Riflemen*.

(For the Short Rifle.)

Caution. Manual Exercise.

1. Secure Arms (2)—Shoulder Arms (2).
2. Present Arms (3)—Shoulder Arms (2).
3. Support Arms (1)—Shoulder Arms (1).
4. Order Arms (2)—Fix Swords (1)—Shoulder Arms (2).
5. Port Arms (2)—Charge Swords (1)—Shoulder Arms (2).
6. Slope Arms (3)—Shoulder Arms (3).
7. Order Arms (2)—Unfix Swords.

Rear rank take Close order.—March.

Caution. Platoon Exercise in Slow time.

Prepare to load (2).

Load (5).

Rod (2).

Home (4).

Return (2).

Cap (6).

Fire a Volley, at 300 yards. Ready (1).

Present (5).

* In Quick time: Load (5, & cap 6).

Shoulder Arms (2).

Order Arms (3 or 2). Stand at Ease.

* When the men have come to the capping, and thence to the prepare to load, position.

N.B.—One pause of Slow time should be made between the first and last parts of each word of command both in the *Manual* and *Platoon*: except in the command *Fix bayonets* (or *swords*), in which a longer time must be given.

APPENDIX (2).

DEFINITIONS AND DERIVATIONS.

Alignment The imaginary straight line lying between any two points on which a line may be formed, or the pivot flanks of a column dressed. *See p. 58, Q. 1, and p. 164, Q. 2, 3.*

Appui, Point of . . . From the French *appui*, a support. That extremity of an alignment upon which the formation takes place and from which the line, or intermediate points, are dressed. *See p. 164, Q. 2.*

Base Point The point given when column is formed on a flank company from line ; and when a column closes on, or opens out from, its front or rear company. *See pp. 114, 116, 155.*

Base Points The points given by the coverer and supernumerary serjeant of the company of formation when line is formed on any one company ; by the centre serjeant and the coverers of the two centre companies when the formation is on the centre of the battalion. *See p. 165, Q. 7, 8.*

Battalion A Regiment ; or any one battalion of a Regiment consisting of two (or more) battalions. "The unit of the modern tactical System."

Brigade [Fr. *brigade*. Ital. *brigata*.] Two, or more, Regiments (or battalions of different Regiments) acting together under the command of one officer, termed a Brigadier.

Cadence The Time of Marching (*see p. 11, Q. 2*). The lengths of the plummets used for swinging the different cadences are as follows:—

	Inches.	100ths.
For <i>Slow</i> time	24	.96
" <i>Quick</i> time	11	.66
" <i>Double</i> time	6	.26

Column A succession or row of companies, subdivisions, or sections, each arranged in the same manner. [A Double Column is formed of two separate successions or rows of companies (or parts of companies), one on the flank of the other.]

Defile From the French *défilé*. A narrow pass.

Deployment From the French *déployer*, literally ‘to display, unfold’.

Diagonal March. A march by which ground is taken at once to a flank and to the front, at an angle of 45° with the perpendicular direction of the original front.

“*Dress*” From the French *redresser*, ‘to straighten’. The word given to the men of a company (subdivision, or section), to correct their position on being halted after a movement.

Drill From an obsolete French word *drille*, ‘a soldier’. Instruction and practice of military movements. “All drill may be carried on as a series of changes on the different elements: Line, column, square: Line, square, column: Column, line, square, &c.” —*Aide Mémoire*.

Echelon From the French *échelon*, literally ‘a round of a ladder’. A formation in which the successive companies of a Battalion are placed parallel to one

another, but no two on the same alignment. An Echelon is termed 'direct' or 'oblique', according to the position of its component parts with reference to the original front of the line.

Evolution . . . [Lat: *evolutus*.] A movement by which troops change their position for attack or defence. By Tactics, as distinguished from Strategy, is meant the art of handling troops, i.e. of applying in the presence of an enemy the evolutions men have been taught at drill. Strategy, the science of conducting the great operations of war; movements that take place out of sight of the enemy.

File, A . . . [Fr: *file*. Lat: *filum*.] Two men, a front-rank man and his rear-rank man, who always work together; one being in rear of the other in advancing or retiring, one on the side of the other in taking ground to a flank.

Inner flank . . . In Line, that flank of a company which is nearest the point of *appui*; in Oblique echelon, the flank on which it wheeled into echelon; in Direct echelon, the flank nearest to the company next in front. See p. 208, Q. 5, and p. 220, Q. 5.

Line The formation in which troops display their front in its whole extent, with their minimum depth of formation.

Manoeuvre i.q. *Evolution*.

Outer flank . . . That opposite to the 'inner' flank.

Pivot The flank man on which a company, subdivision, or section, wheels.

Pivot flank . . . See p. 5, Q. 29, and p. 33, Q. 5.

<i>Platoon</i>	From the French <i>peloton</i> , lit. ‘a ball, or pellet.’ A small body of Infantry. The word is only retained in the term ‘Platoon Exercise’.
<i>Rank</i>	A line of men placed side by side without any intervals between them.
<i>Reverse flank . .</i>	That opposite to the pivot flank.
<i>Section</i>	The fourth part of a Company.
<i>Skirmishing . .</i>	[Fr : <i>escarmouche</i> . Ital. : <i>scaramuccia</i> .] Fighting in loose order;—‘Light Drill’.
<i>Squad</i>	[Fr : <i>escouade</i> .] A division of a Company, for purposes of interior economy: also a small number of men formed for instruction in drill.
<i>Squad with intervals</i>	A few men placed in line at arm’s length apart, for recruit or setting-up drill. Or the squad may consist of two such lines of men, the men in the second line covering the intervals between those in the first.
<i>Staff Officers . .</i>	In a Regiment (exclusive of mounted officers): the Paymaster, Surgeon, Assistant - Surgeon, and Quarter-master.
<i>Staff Serjeants . .</i>	The Armourer - Serjeant, Quarter-master-Serjeant, Hospital-Serjeant, Paymaster’s Clerk, Orderly-room Clerk.
<i>Subaltern</i>	[Fr : <i>subalterne</i> .] Any military officer under the rank of Captain.
<i>Subdivision . . .</i>	The half of a Company.
<i>Supernumerary } Bank</i>	A rank composed of subalterns and n. c. officers, 8 paces from the rear rank when a company is in line, one pace when in column or echelon.

NEW EDITIONS OF MILITARY WORKS

SOLD BY

W. CLOWES & SONS, 14, CHARING CROSS,

LONDON, S.W.

THE FOLLOWING BY CAPTAIN MALTON.

COMPANY AND BATTALION DRILL ILLUSTRATED : INCLUDING LIGHT DRILL. In accordance with the FIELD EXERCISE AND EVOLUTIONS OF INFANTRY as revised in 1861. *Fifth Edition.* 1862. *With 74 Plates.* *In Cloth, 12s. ; post-free, 12s. 8d.*

SKELETON DIAGRAMS FOR EXAMINATION IN COMPANY AND BATTALION DRILL. Being the Plates of 'Company and Battalion Drill Illustrated'; with Officers, Covering-Sergeants, and Colour-Party omitted. *In Cloth, 4s. 6d. ; post-free, 4s. 8d.*

THE DUTIES OF COVERING-SERGEANTS in Company and Battalion Drill : in accordance with the Field Exercise as revised in 1861. *Fourth Edition.* 1862. *In limp Cloth, 1s. 6d. ; post-free, 1s. 7d.*

THE A B C OF SKIRMISHING : being the Light Infantry Movements of a Company; in accordance with the revised Field Exercise and Evolutions of Infantry. *Fourth Edition.* 1862. *With 2 Plates, and the Bugle Sounds.* *In limp Cloth, 1s. ; post-free, 1s. 1d.*

COMPANY MANCEUVRES : or, Suggestions for Company Drill on the System laid down in the Field Exercise and Evolutions of Infantry. *Second Edition.* 1862. *In limp Cloth, 1s. ; post-free, 1s. 1d.*

SINNOTT'S MILITARY CATECHISM : adapted to the Field Exercise and Evolutions of Infantry as revised in 1861. *Fifteenth Edition.* 1862. *In Cloth, 3s. ; post-free, 3s. 4d.*

NEW MILITARY WORKS.

THE FIELD EXERCISE AND EVOLUTIONS OF INFANTRY, as revised, by Her Majesty's Command, 1861.
In Cloth, 4s. ; post-free, 4s. 8d.

THE SQUAD BOOK. A New and Revised Edition of the Squad Book for the Infantry, adapted to the new System of Classification of the Army, and showing the methods of Marking and Laying out the Soldier's Necessaries for Inspection. The whole in conformity with the Orders laid down in the 'Queen's Regulations' and Orders for the Army. *In Cloth, 2s. ; post-free, 2s. 2d.*

MANUAL OF FIELD ARTILLERY EXERCISES. Dated Horse Guards, 1st August, 1861. *In Cloth, 5s. ; post-free, 5s. 6d.*

REGULATIONS FOR CONDUCTING THE MUSKETRY INSTRUCTION OF THE ARMY. 1859. *In Cloth, 1s. ; post-free, 1s. 4d.*

MILITARY EXAMINATION FOR JUNIOR OFFICERS OF INFANTRY, comprising 600 Questions and Answers. By COLONEL SIR J. E. ALEXANDER, 14th Regiment. *Second Edition.* *In Cloth, 2s. ; post-free, 2s. 2d.*

MUSKETRY CATECHISM FOR BOTH SERVICES AND RIFLE CLUBS. By CAPTAIN COLES, Instructor of Musketry, Hythe. *Sixth Edition, Illustrated.* *In Cloth, 2s. ; post-free, 2s. 1d.*

HINTS ON THE SELECTION AND FORMATION OF RIFLE RANGES. By CAPTAIN COLES, Captain Instructor, School of Musketry. *Plates.* *In Cloth, 2s. ; post-free, 2s. 1d.*



CATALOGUE
OF
MILITARY AND OTHER BOOKS.

WILLIAM CLOWES & SONS,

London Printers, Booksellers, and Stationers,

14, CHARING CROSS, LONDON, S.W.;

Publishers, by Authority, of

THE OFFICIAL REGULATION AND DRILL BOOKS,
THE ANNUAL ARMY LIST, &c.

BOOKS PUBLISHED BY W. CLOWES AND SONS,

HISTORICAL RECORDS OF THE BRITISH ARMY.

CAVALRY.		INFANTRY—(continued).	
	s. d.		s. d.
Life Guards	12 0	9 Foot	8 0
R. H. Guards	10 0	10 Ditto	8 0
1 Dragoon Guards	8 0	11 Ditto	8 0
2 Ditto	8 0	12 Ditto	8 0
3 Ditto	8 0	13 Ditto	8 0
4 Ditto	8 0	14 Ditto	6 0
5 Ditto	8 0	15 Ditto	8 0
6 Ditto	8 0	16 Ditto	8 0
7 Ditto	8 0	17 Ditto	8 0
1 Dragoons	8 0	18 Ditto	8 0
2 Ditto	8 0	19 Ditto	8 0
3 Ditto	8 0	20 Ditto	8 0
6 Ditto	8 0	21 Ditto	8 0
7 Ditto	8 0	22 Ditto	8 0
8 Ditto	8 0	23 Ditto	8 0
9 Ditto	6 0	31 Ditto	8 0
10 Ditto	6 0	34 Ditto	8 0
12 Ditto	6 0	36 Ditto	8 0
13 Ditto	6 0	39 Ditto	8 0
14 Ditto	8 0	42 Ditto	12 0
15 Ditto	8 0	46 Ditto	8 0
16 Ditto	8 0	53 Ditto	8 0
17 Lancers	10 0	56 Ditto	6 0
INFANTRY.			
1 Foot	12 0	61 Ditto	6 0
2 Ditto	8 0	67 Ditto	8 0
3 Ditto	12 0	70 Ditto	6 0
4 Ditto	8 0	71 Ditto	8 0
5 Ditto	8 0	72 Ditto	8 0
6 Ditto	8 0	73 Ditto	8 0
7 Ditto	8 0	74 Ditto	8 0
8 Ditto	8 0	86 Ditto	8 0
		87 Ditto	8 0
		88 Ditto	6 0
		92 Ditto	8 0

BOOKS PUBLISHED BY W. CLOWES AND SONS,

FOR THE ARMY IN GENERAL.

The Queen's Regulations and Orders for the Army.
1859. 3s. 6d.; *post-free*, 4s. 2d.
Pocket Edition of the above. 1s.; *post-free*,
1s. 2d.

Addenda to the Royal Warrant and Regulations. 3s.

Regulations for the Dress of Officers of the Army.
2s. 6d.; *post-free*, 2s. 10d.

Regulations for conducting the Musketry Instruction
of the Army, 1859. 1s.; *post-free*, 1s. 4d.

Report on the School of Musketry at Hythe. 1860. 1s.
Ditto for 1861. 1s.

The Mutiny Act and Articles of War. 4s.; *post-free*,
4s. 4d.

Medical Regulations for the Army. 1s. 8d.; *post-free*, 2s.

Regulations and Instructions for the Guidance of
Officers of the Purveyor's Department of the Army. 3s.; *post-*
free, 3s. 4d.

Macdougall on the Theory of War. 10s. 6d.; *post-*
free, 11s.

Queen's Warrant and Abstract of Foreign Barrack
Regulations. 5s.

Addenda to the Foreign Barrack Regulations. 2s. 6d.

Ditto—Second Series. 2s. 6d.

Instructions for Regimental Schools. 6d.

Regulations for Sounds of the Bugle. 4s. 6d.

Regulations relating to the Conveyance of Her
Majesty's Forces, their Baggage and Stores, by Railway. 2s.

FOR THE CAVALRY.

The Book of Aids; or, Catechism in the System of
Equitation practised at the Cavalry Riding Establishment.
1s.; *post-free*, 1s. 1d.

On Outposts, Patrols, &c. By Major-Gen. Sir L.B.
Lovell. 2s.; *post-free*, 2s. 1d.

BOOKS PUBLISHED BY W. CLOWES AND SONS,

FOR THE CAVALRY—(*continued*).

The Cavalry Manual. By Colonel Ainslie, 14th Light Dragoons. *Plates. Third Edition.* 2s. 6d.; *post-free*, 2s. 8d.
Field-Days of the 2nd Life Guards. By Colonel George Greenwood. Fcap. folio. *Plates.* 7s. 6d.
Cavalry Sword Exercise. By Colonel George Greenwood. 2s. 6d.; *post-free*, 2s. 7d.
The Cavalry Catechism. By Captain Robbins. 5s.; *post-free*, 5s. 2d.
Cavalry; its History and Tactics. By Captain Nolan. 10s. 6d.; *post-free*, 11s.

FOR THE ROYAL ARTILLERY, AND WORKS ON
ENGINEERING AND FORTIFICATION.

Manual of Field Artillery Exercises. 1861. 5s.; *post-free*, 5s. 6d.
Pocket Edition of the above. 1s. 6d.; *post-free*, 1s. 8d.
Manual of Artillery Exercises, 1860. 2s. 4d.; *post-free*,
2s. 10d.
Pocket Edition of the above. 1s.; *post-free*, 1s. 2d.
Instructions and Regulations for Field Battery Exercise and Movements for the Royal Regiment of Artillery. 8s.; *post-free*, 8s. 4d.
Dress Regulations of the Royal Artillery. 6d.; *post-free*, 7d.
The Defence and Attack of Outposts, Siege Duties, &c. By Colonel Jebb, C.B., R.E. 3 Parts in 1. *Plates.* 14s.; *post-free*, 14s. 6d.
The Duties required to be performed by Officers and Soldiers of the Army at a Siege. By Colonel Jebb. *Plates.* 14s.
A Flying Shot at Fergusson, and his ‘Peril of Portsmouth,’ Invasion of England, &c. By Colonel Jebb. 1s. 6d.
Observations on the Defence of London; with Suggestions respecting the necessary Works. By Colonel Sir J. Jebb. 1s.

BOOKS PUBLISHED BY W. CLOWES AND SONS,

THE ROYAL ARTILLERY, ETC.—(continued).

Handbook for Field Service. By Colonel Lefroy, R.A., F.R.S. *Third Edition, Revised.* 7s. 6d.; *post-free*, 7s. 8d.

Essays on Field Fortification. By Major Fenwick. 4s.

The Artilleryman's Pocket Companion. By Colonel Shaw, K.S.F. *In Case.* 2s.

The Artillerist's Manual, and British Soldier's Compendium. By Major F. A. Griffiths, R.A. 7s. 6d.; *post-free*, 7s. 10d.

The Re-construction of the Artillery. By Major-Gen. Chesney. 1s.

The Royal Artillery. 1s.

Practical Military Surveying and Sketching, with the Use of the Compass and Sextant, Theodolite, Mountain Barometer, &c. By Captain Drayson, R.A. 4s. 6d.; *post-free*, 4s. 10d.

On the Use of Artillery in the Field, with a view to certain Improvements in the System of Modern Tactics. Translated from the French of the Russian Major-General Okouneff. 1s. 6d.

Introductory Essay to the Study of Fortification. By Major Straith. *With Atlas.* 13s.

Treatise on Fortification and Artillery. By Major Straith. *With Atlas.* £2. 2s.

Kimber's Vauban's First System. *With Plans.* 5s.

A Treatise on Field Fortification. By Capt. Macaulay. *With Atlas.* 12s.

A Treatise on Military Surveying. By Lieut.-Col. Jackson. 14s.

Landmann's Principles of Fortification. 4s.

FOR THE INFANTRY.

The Field Exercise and Evolutions of Infantry, as revised by Her Majesty's Command, 1861. 4s.; *post-free*, 4s. 8d.

Pocket Edition of the above. 1s.; *post-free*, 1s. 2d.

BOOKS PUBLISHED BY W. CLOWES AND SONS,

FOR THE INFANTRY—(*continued*).

Company and Battalion Drill Illustrated: including Light Drill. In accordance with the FIELD EXERCISE AND EVOLUTIONS OF INFANTRY as revised in 1861. By Captain W. D. Malton, Dumfriesshire Militia. 1862. *Fifth Edition*. With 74 Plates. *In Cloth, 12s.; post-free, 12s. 8d.*

Skeleton Diagrams for Examination in Company and Battalion Drill. Being the Plates of 'Company and Battalion Drill Illustrated', with Officers, Covering-Sergeants, and Colour-Party omitted. *4s. 6d.; post-free, 4s. 10d.*

The Squad Book. *New Edition. 2s.; post-free, 2s. 2d.*
Infantry Sword Exercise. Revised Edition. *6d.; post-free, 7d.*

On the Minié Rifle. By Lieut. Thwaites. *Diagrams. 2s. 6d.*

Extension Motions with the Firelock. Paper, *6d.; Card, 1s.*

Battalion Diagrams of the principal Evolutions, extracted from the FIELD EXERCISE BOOK, revised in the year 1859. By Colonel Lysons, C.B., Assist. Adjutant-General. On Linen, *5s. 6d.; folded in Case, 6s.; post-free, 6s. 4d.*

System of Light Drill; or, Questions and Answers on Skirmishing: in Accordance with the 'Field Evolutions' and the 'Circular Memorandum,' dated Horse Guards, May 1, 1860. By Lieut. Glancy. *2s. 6d.; post-free, 2s. 8d.*

CATECHISMS AND MANUALS.

The Duties of Covering-Sergeants in Company and Battalion Drill: in accordance with the Field Exercise as revised in 1861. By Captain W. D. Malton, Author of 'Company and Battalion Drill Illustrated,' &c. *Fourth Edition. 1862. 1s. 6d.; post-free, 1s. 7d.*

The A B C of Skirmishing: being the Light Infantry Movements of a Company; in accordance with the revised Field Exercise and Evolutions of Infantry. By Captain W. D. Malton, Author of 'Company and Battalion Drill Illustrated,' &c. *Fourth Edition. 1862. With 2 Plates, and the Bugle Sounds. 1s.; post-free, 1s. 1d.*

BOOKS PUBLISHED BY W. CLOWES AND SONS,

CATECHISMS AND MANUALS—(*continued*).

Company Manceuvres: or Suggestions for Company Drill on the System laid down in the Field Exercise and Evolutions of Infantry. By Captain W. D. Malton, Author of 'Company and Battalion Drill Illustrated,' &c. *Second Edition*. 1862. 1s.; post-free, 1s. 1d.

Sinnott's Military Catechism: adapted to the Revised System of the Field Exercise and Evolutions of Infantry. By Captain W. D. Malton, Author of 'Company and Battalion Drill Illustrated,' &c. *Fifteenth Edition*. 1862. 3s.; post-free, 3s. 4d.

A Musketry Catechism: for the Use of both Services and Rifle Clubs. By Captain Coles, Instructor of Musketry, Hythe. *Sixth Edition, Revised and Enlarged. Illustrated.* 2s.; post-free, 2s. 1d.

Hints on the Selection and Formation of Rifle Ranges. By Captain Coles, Captain Instructor, School of Musketry. *With Plates.* 2s.; post-free, 2s. 1d.

Memoir on the Duty of Picquets. By Colonel Fitz-clarence, late Coldstream Guards. *Fourth Edition.* 2s.

Three Lectures on the Rifle. By Col. Wilford. *Second Edition.* 2s.

Military Examination for Junior Officers of Infantry; comprising 600 Questions and Answers. By Colonel Sir J. E. Alexander, 14th Regiment. *Second Edition.* 2s.; post-free, 2s. 2d.

Manual for the Militia; or, Fighting made Easy. By Colonel Jebb, C.B., &c. *Plates.* 2s.; post-free, 2s. 2d.

The Officer's Manual: Military Maxims of Napoleon. 4s.

A Treatise on the Employment of Light Troops on Actual Service. By Colonel C. Leslie, K.H., Unattached. 5s.

Marching Out; a Manual of Surveying and Field Sketching. Intended for the Use of Officers, &c. By Captain L. Flower. 2s.; post-free, 2s. 1d.

A Manual of Position Drill, illustrated with Figures. 1s. 6d.

The Young Officer's Companion. By Lord de Ros. 6s.

BOOKS PUBLISHED BY W. CLOWES AND SONS,

FOR VOLUNTEER CORPS.

Yeomanry Regulations: being an Abridgment of the Regulations for the Formation and Movements of the Cavalry. 8s. ; *post-free*, 8s. 4d.

Regulations applicable to Corps of Yeomanry Cavalry. 6d. ; *post-free*, 7d.

Mounted Rifles: the Use of the Horse and Gun for National Defence. By Lieut.-Col. Acland, Devon Rifle Volunteers. 6d. ; *post-free*, 7d.

Instructions for Mounted Rifle Volunteers. By Authority of the Secretary of State for War. 6d. ; *post-free*, 7d.

Drill and Rifle Instruction for the Corps of Rifle Volunteers. By Authority of the Secretary of State for War. *Tenth Edition*. 6d. ; *post-free*, 8d.

Manual of Drills for Heavy Guns, for the Use of the Volunteer Artillery. 1s. 4d. ; *post-free*, 1s. 5d.

Regulations for the Volunteer Force. 1861. 1s. ; *post-free*, 1s. 4d.

Manual for Rifle Volunteers: their Duties, Privileges, Exemptions, &c. ; the General Volunteer Act ; Instructions for the Formation of Volunteer Rifle Corps ; and Model Rules and Regulations. 1s. ; *post-free*, 1s. 2d.

Hand-Book Dictionary for Militia and Volunteer Services. By Lieut.-Col. Percy Scott. 3s. 6d. ; *post-free*, 3s. 8d.

Standing Orders on the Organization and Interior Economy of Volunteer Corps. 3s. 6d.

Remarks on National Defence, and on the Instruction of Volunteer Corps, &c. By Sir Duncan Macdougall. *Plates*, 2s. 6d. ; *post-free*, 2s. 8d.

PERIODICAL PUBLICATIONS.

The Monthly Army List. 1s. 6d.

War Office Annual Army List. Royal 8vo, 27s. ; Demy 8vo, 16s.

Hart's Quarterly Army List, published on the 1st of January, April, July, and October. 10s. 6d.

Hart's Annual Army List. 21s.

BOOKS PUBLISHED BY W. CLOWES AND SONS,

MILITARY LAW.

Observations on the Practice and Forms of District, Regimental, and Detachment Courts-Martial; also, Remarks on Courts of Inquiry, &c. By Lieut.-Gen. Sir George D'Aguilar, K.C.B. 1861. 8s. 6d.; *post-free*, 8s. 10d.

Manual of Military Law, for the Army, Militia, and Volunteer Service. By Colonel Pipon, Assist. Adj.-General; and J. F. Collier, Esq. *Second and Revised Edition*. 3s. 6d.

The Law relating to Officers in the Army. By H. Prendergast, Esq., Barrister-at-Law. 6s. 6d.

Clarke's Forms of Courts-Martial. 1s.

MISCELLANEOUS.

Proceedings of the National Rifle Association, 1861. 2s. 6d.; *post-free*, 2s. 10d.

Report on the Examination for Admission to the Staff College, 1861. 1s.; *post-free*, 1d. 1d.

Guide to the Army Competitive Examinations. By Captain A. H. Hutchinson. 3s. 6d.; *post-free*, 3s. 8d.

Pencil-Notes on Drill, or Notes on the Field Exercise. By Captain S. Flood Page. 1s.

Tents and Tent Life, from the Earliest Ages to the Present Time; to which is added, the Practice of Encamping an Army in Ancient and Modern Times. By Major Godfrey Rhodes. *Second Edition*. 8s.

Military Figures for the Explanation and Practice of the Exercise and Evolutions of the Army. By Major Hopkins, K.H. In a Box. 12s. 6d.

Military Blocks, illustrative of the Field Exercise and Evolutions of Infantry. By Captain Flower. In a Box. 10s. 6d.

Companion to the New Field Exercise. A Box of Miniature Blocks, with Key. 2s. 6d.

The Military Miscellany. By Henry Marshall, F.R.S.E. 10s.

On Moral Command. By Lieut.-General Sir John Rolt, K.C.B. *Third Edition*. 5s.

BOOKS PUBLISHED BY W. CLOWES AND SONS,

MISCELLANEOUS—(*continued*).

Hints to Aspirants for the Army, and Young Officers
on Appointment. By Major Charles F. Parkinson, late 73rd
Regiment. 2s. 6d.

The Art of Fencing: a Detail of Attack and Defence.
By George Chapman, Hon. Sec. London Fencing Club. *With
Diagram.* 5s.

Foil Practice, with a Review of the Art of Fencing.
By G. Chapman, Hon. Sec. London Fencing Club. 3s. 6d.
post-free, 3s. 8d.

Advice to Schoolmaster-Sergeants. 6d.

The Soldier's Life: its Dignity and Honour. 2s.

Horse Training, Ladies' Horsemanship, &c. 1s.

Regulations for Prisons in England and Wales. 2s.

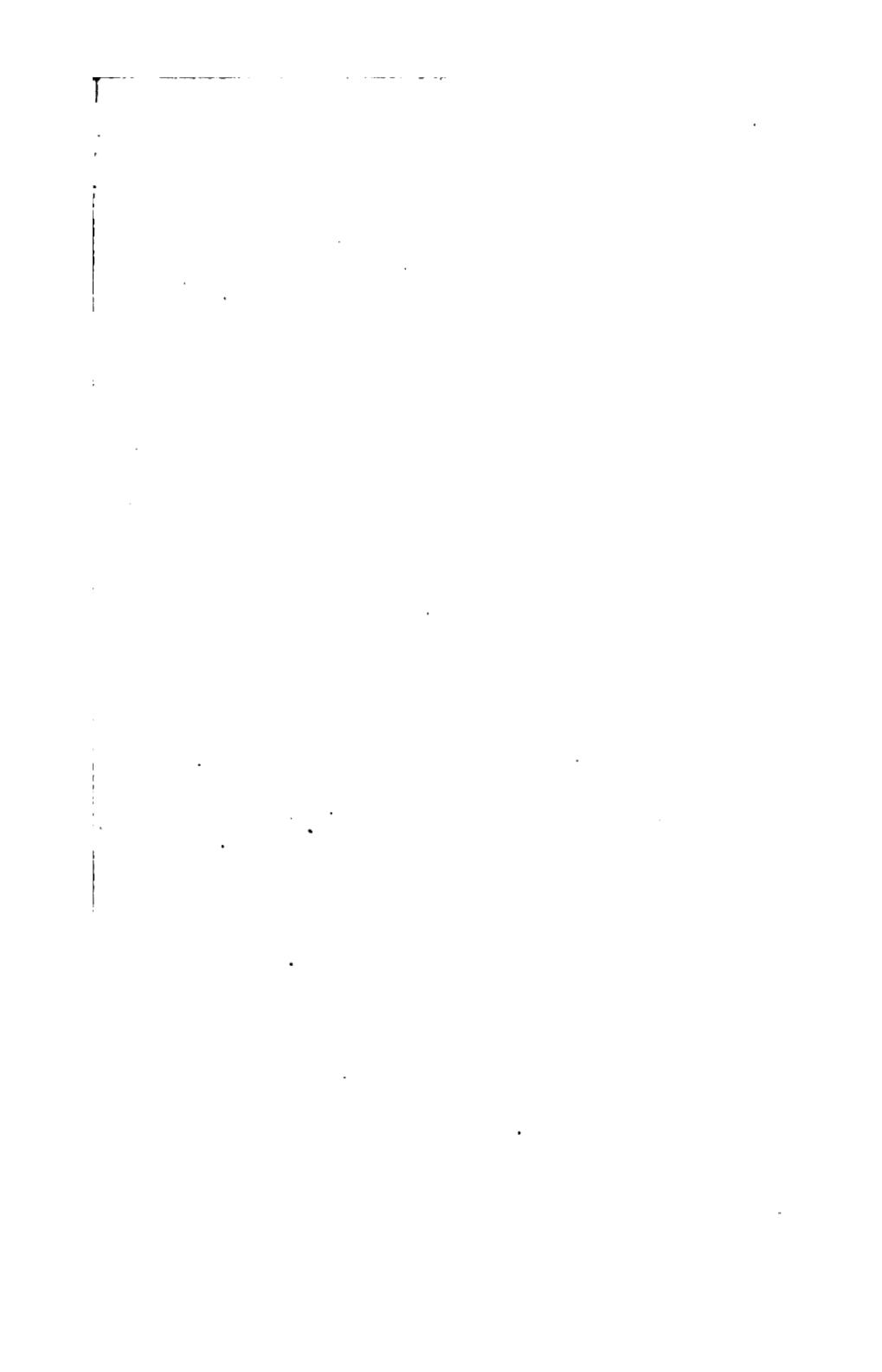
POLICE REGULATIONS.

Abstract of Laws relating to Drivers of Hackney
Carriages. 6d.

Fares for Hackney Carriages, and Distances within a
Circle of Four Miles radius from Charing Cross. *Published
by Authority of the Commissioner of Metropolitan Police.*
2s. 6d.

A Manual of Drill, prepared for the Use of County
and District Constables throughout England and Wales. By
Captain W. C. Harris, Assistant-Commissioner of the Police of
the Metropolis. *Third and enlarged Edition.* 1s. 6d.; *post-
free*, 1s. 7d.

Questions and Answers framed for the Instruction of
Constables, on joining the Police. By Captain Harris. 6d.;
post-free, 7d.





and the other two were not. This was a significant difference, $p < 0.05$.

Table 2 shows the results of the analysis of variance of the data from the first study.

The results of the analysis of variance showed that the effect of the treatment was significant, $F(1, 12) = 10.2, p < 0.05$.

Table 3 shows the results of the analysis of variance of the data from the second study.

The results of the analysis of variance showed that the effect of the treatment was significant, $F(1, 12) = 10.2, p < 0.05$.

Table 4 shows the results of the analysis of variance of the data from the third study.

The results of the analysis of variance showed that the effect of the treatment was significant, $F(1, 12) = 10.2, p < 0.05$.

Table 5 shows the results of the analysis of variance of the data from the fourth study.

The results of the analysis of variance showed that the effect of the treatment was significant, $F(1, 12) = 10.2, p < 0.05$.

Table 6 shows the results of the analysis of variance of the data from the fifth study.

The results of the analysis of variance showed that the effect of the treatment was significant, $F(1, 12) = 10.2, p < 0.05$.

Table 7 shows the results of the analysis of variance of the data from the sixth study.

The results of the analysis of variance showed that the effect of the treatment was significant, $F(1, 12) = 10.2, p < 0.05$.

Table 8 shows the results of the analysis of variance of the data from the seventh study.

The results of the analysis of variance showed that the effect of the treatment was significant, $F(1, 12) = 10.2, p < 0.05$.

Table 9 shows the results of the analysis of variance of the data from the eighth study.

The results of the analysis of variance showed that the effect of the treatment was significant, $F(1, 12) = 10.2, p < 0.05$.

Table 10 shows the results of the analysis of variance of the data from the ninth study.

The results of the analysis of variance showed that the effect of the treatment was significant, $F(1, 12) = 10.2, p < 0.05$.

Table 11 shows the results of the analysis of variance of the data from the tenth study.

The results of the analysis of variance showed that the effect of the treatment was significant, $F(1, 12) = 10.2, p < 0.05$.

Table 12 shows the results of the analysis of variance of the data from the eleventh study.

The results of the analysis of variance showed that the effect of the treatment was significant, $F(1, 12) = 10.2, p < 0.05$.

Table 13 shows the results of the analysis of variance of the data from the twelfth study.

The results of the analysis of variance showed that the effect of the treatment was significant, $F(1, 12) = 10.2, p < 0.05$.

Table 14 shows the results of the analysis of variance of the data from the thirteenth study.

The results of the analysis of variance showed that the effect of the treatment was significant, $F(1, 12) = 10.2, p < 0.05$.